

UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549  
FORM S-3

REGISTRATION STATEMENT  
UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933

**XENETIC BIOSCIENCES, INC.**  
(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Nevada  
(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

45-2952962  
(I.R.S. Employer Identification No.)

**99 Hayden Ave, Suite 230**  
**Lexington, Massachusetts 02421**  
**(781) 778-7720**  
(Address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

**James F. Parslow**  
**Chief Financial Officer**  
**Xenetic Biosciences, Inc.**  
**99 Hayden Ave, Suite 230**  
**Lexington, Massachusetts 02421**  
**(781) 778-7720**  
(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

*Copies to:*  
**Danielle C. Price**  
**Holland & Knight LLP**  
**701 Brickell Avenue, Suite 3300, Miami, Florida 33131**  
**Phone: (305) 349-2259**  
**Facsimile: (305) 789-7799**

**Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to the public:** From time to time after the effective date of this registration statement.

If the only securities being registered on this form are being offered pursuant to dividend or interest reinvestment plans, please check the following box. ☐

If any of the securities being registered on this form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, other than securities offered only in connection with dividend or interest reinvestment plans, check the following box: ☒

If this form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering. ☐

If this form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering. ☐

If this form is a registration statement pursuant to General Instruction I.D. or a post-effective amendment thereto that shall become effective upon filing with the Commission pursuant to Rule 462(e) under the Securities Act, check the following box. ☐

If this form is a post-effective amendment to a registration statement filed pursuant to General Instruction I.D. filed to register additional securities or additional classes of securities pursuant to Rule 413(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box. ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer" "smaller reporting company" and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer ☐ Accelerated filer ☐ Non-accelerated filer ☐ (Do not check if a smaller reporting company)  
Smaller reporting company ☒ Emerging growth company ☐

If an emerging growth company, indicate by a check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 7(a)(2)(B) of the Securities Act. ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). YES ☐ NO ☒

### CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE

Title of each class of Securities to be Registered	Amount to be registered/Proposed maximum offering price per unit/Proposed maximum aggregate offering Price (1) (2)	Amount of Registration Fee (1)
Xenetic Biosciences, Inc.:		
Common Stock		
Preferred Stock		
Warrants		
Depository Shares		
Debt Securities (3)		
Units (4)		
Rights		
<b>TOTAL:</b>	\$50,000,000	\$6,225.00

- (1) As permitted by General Instruction II.D of Form S-3 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), the fee table does not specify by each class of securities to be registered information as to the amount to be registered, proposed maximum offering price per share, and proposed maximum aggregate offering price.
- (2) An indeterminate number of the securities of each identified class of securities is being registered for possible issuance from time to time at indeterminate prices. Includes an indeterminate amount of our securities as may be issued upon conversion of, or upon exercise of, debt securities, shares of preferred stock, warrants, units or rights registered under this registration statement.
- (3) If any debt securities are issued at an original issue discount, then the offering price shall be in such greater principal amount as may be sold for an aggregate initial offering price of up to the proposed maximum aggregate offering price.
- (4) Each unit will be issued under a unit agreement and will represent an interest in two or more equity securities, which may or may not be separable from one another.

The registrant hereby amends this Registration Statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this Registration Statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act or until this Registration Statement shall become effective on such date as the Securities and Exchange Commission, acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.

The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. We may not sell the securities until the Registration Statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any state where the offer or sale is not permitted.

**SUBJECT TO COMPLETION, DATED SEPTEMBER 27, 2018**

**PROSPECTUS**



**Xenetic Biosciences, Inc.  
Common Stock  
Preferred Stock  
Warrants  
Units  
Rights  
Depository Shares  
Debt Securities**

We may offer, issue and sell, from time to time, shares of our common stock, preferred stock, warrants, units, rights, depository shares and debt securities which may consist of debentures, notes, or other types of debt, in one or more offerings. We will provide specific terms of each offering and issuance of these securities, such as when we sell the securities, the amounts of securities we will sell and the prices and other terms on which we will sell them, in supplements to this prospectus. We may offer and sell these securities to or through one or more underwriters, dealers and agents, or directly to purchasers, on a continuous or delayed basis. You should read this prospectus and any supplement carefully before you decide to invest. This prospectus may not be used to consummate sales of these securities unless it is accompanied by a prospectus supplement.

Our common stock is listed on the NASDAQ Capital Markets ("Nasdaq") under the symbol "XBIO".

Our principal office is located at Hayden Ave, Suite 230, Lexington, Massachusetts 02421. Our telephone number is (781) 778-7720.

*Investing in our securities involves risks. You should carefully consider the information referred to under the heading "[Risk Factors](#)" on page 4 of this prospectus before you invest.*

**NEITHER THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION NOR ANY STATE SECURITIES COMMISSION HAS APPROVED OR DISAPPROVED OF THESE SECURITIES OR DETERMINED THAT THIS PROSPECTUS IS TRUTHFUL OR COMPLETE. ANY REPRESENTATION TO THE CONTRARY IS A CRIMINAL OFFENSE.**

**The date of this prospectus is                      , 2018**

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<a href="#"><u>ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS</u></a>	1
<a href="#"><u>SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS</u></a>	2
<a href="#"><u>PROSPECTUS SUMMARY</u></a>	3
<a href="#"><u>RISK FACTORS</u></a>	4
<a href="#"><u>USE OF PROCEEDS</u></a>	4
<a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK</u></a>	5
<a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS</u></a>	8
<a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF UNITS</u></a>	8
<a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF RIGHTS</u></a>	8
<a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF DEPOSITARY SHARES</u></a>	9
<a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES</u></a>	12
<a href="#"><u>CERTAIN PROVISIONS OF THE NEVADA REVISED STATUTES AND OUR CHARTER AND BYLAWS</u></a>	20
<a href="#"><u>PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION</u></a>	24
<a href="#"><u>LEGAL MATTERS</u></a>	28
<a href="#"><u>EXPERTS</u></a>	28
<a href="#"><u>WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION</u></a>	28
<a href="#"><u>INCORPORATION OF CERTAIN DOCUMENTS BY REFERENCE</u></a>	29

**You should rely only on the information contained in this document or to which we have referred you. We have not authorized anyone to provide you with information that is different. This document may only be used where it is legal to sell these securities. The information in this document may only be accurate on the date of this document.**

## ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus is part of a registration statement on Form S-3 that we filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or “SEC” or “Commission”, using a “shelf” registration process. Under this shelf registration process, we may sell the securities described in this prospectus in one or more offerings. This prospectus provides you with a general description of the securities we may offer. Each time we offer to sell securities, we will provide a supplement to this prospectus that will contain specific information about the terms of that offering. The prospectus supplement may also add, update or change information contained in this prospectus. It is important for you to consider the information contained in this prospectus and any prospectus supplement together with additional information described under the headings “*Where You Can Find More Information*” and “*Incorporation of Certain Documents by Reference*.”

You should rely only on the information incorporated by reference or set forth in this prospectus or the applicable prospectus supplement. We have not authorized anyone else to provide you with additional or different information. You should not assume that the information in this prospectus, the applicable prospectus supplement or any other offering material is accurate as of any date other than the dates on the front of those documents.

Our logo and some of our trademarks and tradenames are used in this prospectus. This prospectus also includes trademarks, tradenames and service marks that are the property of others. Solely for convenience, trademarks, tradenames and service marks referred to in this prospectus may appear without the ®, ™ and SM symbols. References to our trademarks, tradenames and service marks are not intended to indicate in any way that we will not assert to the fullest extent under applicable law our rights or the rights of the applicable licensor, nor that respective owners to other intellectual property rights will not assert, to the fullest extent under applicable law, their rights thereto. We do not intend the use or display of other companies’ trademarks and trade names to imply a relationship with, or endorsement or sponsorship of us by any other companies. Since our patents are either held by us or our wholly-owned subsidiaries, we will not distinguish between patents held by us or our subsidiaries in this prospectus.

References in this prospectus to “we,” “us,” “our,” “Xenetic” or the “Company” are to Xenetic Biosciences, Inc. and its subsidiaries.

## SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus contains various “forward-looking statements.” Forward-looking statements relate to expectations, beliefs, projections, future plans and strategies, anticipated events or trends and similar expressions concerning matters that are not historical facts. In some cases, you can identify forward-looking statements by the use of forward-looking terminology such as “believes,” “expects,” “may,” “will,” “would,” “could,” “should,” “seeks,” “approximately,” “intends,” “plans,” “projects,” “estimates” or “anticipates” or the negative of these words and phrases or similar words or phrases. All forward-looking statements may be impacted by a number of risks and uncertainties. These forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to, statements concerning our plans to continue the development of our proposed drug candidate; our expectations regarding the nature, timing and extent of clinical trials and proposed clinical trials, including the timing of generating clinical data from these trials; our expectations regarding the timing for proposed submissions of regulatory filings, including but not limited to any Investigational New Drug filing or any New Drug Application; the nature, timing and extent of collaboration arrangements; the expected results pursuant to collaboration arrangements including the receipts of future payments that may arise pursuant to collaboration arrangements; the outcome of our plans to obtain regulatory approval of our drug candidates; the outcome of our plans for the commercialization of our drug candidates; our plans to address certain markets, engage third party manufacturers and evaluate additional drug candidates for subsequent commercial development and the likelihood and extent of competition to our drug candidates.

The forward-looking statements in this prospectus are based on our beliefs, assumptions and expectations of our future performance, taking into account all information currently available to us. These beliefs, assumptions and expectations are subject to risks and uncertainties and can change as a result of many possible events or factors, not all of which are known to us. If a change occurs, our business, financial condition, liquidity and results of operations may vary materially from those expressed in our forward-looking statements. You should carefully consider these risks before you make an investment decision with respect to our securities, along with the following factors that could cause actual results to vary from our forward-looking statements:

- our need to raise additional working capital in the very near term for the purpose of further developing our primary drug candidate and to continue as a going concern;
- our ability to finance our business;
- product development and commercialization risks;
- our ability to successfully commercialize our current and future drug candidates;
- our ability to achieve milestone and other payments associated with our co-development collaborations and strategic arrangements;
- the impact of new technologies on our drug candidates and our competition;
- changes in laws or regulations of governmental agencies;
- interruptions or cancellation of existing contracts;
- impact of competitive products and pricing;
- product demand and market acceptance and risks;
- the presence of competitors with greater financial resources;
- continued availability of supplies or materials used in manufacturing at the current prices;
- the ability of management to execute plans and motivate personnel in the execution of those plans;
- our ability to attract and retain key personnel;
- adverse publicity related to our products or the Company itself;
- adverse claims relating to our intellectual property;
- the adoption of new, or changes in, accounting principles;
- the costs inherent with complying with statutes and regulations applicable to public reporting companies, such as the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002;
- other new lines of business that the Company may enter in the future; and
- the other factors referenced in this prospectus, including those set forth under the sections captioned “Risk Factors” and “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations,” which are incorporated herein by reference to our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, as amended, and our subsequent Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q;

We cannot guarantee future results, levels of activity, performance or achievements. You should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements, which apply only as of the date of this prospectus. We do not intend and disclaim any duty or obligation to update or revise any industry information or forward-looking statements set forth in this report to reflect new information, future events or otherwise, except as required under the United States (“U.S.”) federal securities laws.

## PROSPECTUS SUMMARY

*This summary highlights selected information and does not contain all the information that is important to you. You should carefully read this prospectus, any applicable prospectus supplement and the documents to which we have referred to in the “Incorporation of Certain Documents by Reference” section below for information about us and our financial statements.*

### Overview

We are a biopharmaceutical company focused on the discovery, research and development of next-generation biologic drugs and novel oncology therapeutics. Our 170+ patent portfolio covers next generation biologic drugs and novel oncology drug therapeutics and provides protection for our current drug candidates and positions us well for strategic partnership and commercialization opportunities. The Company’s objective is to leverage its portfolio to maximize opportunities to out-license assets from its portfolio in order to generate working capital to both build long-term stockholder value and provide the Company with the funding necessary for clinical development of its oncology drug candidates through market launch.

Our lead investigational drug candidate is oncology therapeutic XBIO-101 (‘sodium cridanimod’) for the treatment of progesterin - resistant endometrial cancer. We have exclusive rights to develop and commercialize XBIO-101 worldwide, except for specified countries in the Commonwealth of Independent States. XBIO-101 has been granted orphan drug designation by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration for the potential treatment of progesterone receptor negative (“PrR-”) endometrial cancer in conjunction with progesterone therapy. Our Phase 2 trial for XBIO-101 commenced patient dosing in October 2017. We have experienced slower progress in our Phase 2 trial than originally estimated, and therefore are unable to predict when preliminary data from this trial may be available.

Our lead proprietary technology is PolyXen, an enabling platform technology which can be applied to protein or peptide therapeutics. It uses the natural polymer polysialic acid to prolong a drug’s circulating half-life and potentially improve other pharmacological properties. PolyXen has been demonstrated in human clinical trials to confer prolonged half-life on biotherapeutics such as recombinant human erythropoietin and recombinant Factor VIII. We believe this technology may be applied to a variety of drug candidates to enhance the properties of the therapeutic, potentially providing advantages over competing products.

We commit significant resources to our research and development activities and anticipate continuing to do so for the near future.

### Corporate Information

Our principal office is located at 99 Hayden Ave, Suite 230, Lexington, Massachusetts 02421. Our phone number is (781) 778-7720. Our website is [www.xeneticbio.com](http://www.xeneticbio.com). Our investor relations website can be found under the “Investors” tab at <https://ir.xeneticbio.com/>. We make available on our website under “SEC Filings,” free of charge, our Annual Reports on Form 10-K, Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, Current Reports on Form 8-K and amendments to those reports as soon as reasonably practicable after we electronically file or furnish such materials to the SEC. We also make available on our website our corporate governance documents. Information provided on our website is not part of this prospectus and not incorporated herein.

### The Offering

Under this prospectus, we may offer and sell to the public in one or more series or issuances of common stock, preferred stock, depository shares, debt securities, warrants, units and rights with an aggregate offering price not to exceed \$50,000,000.

## **RISK FACTORS**

Investing in our securities involves risks. You should carefully consider the risks described under “*Risk Factors*” in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and any subsequent Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q (which descriptions are incorporated by reference herein), as well as the other information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus or in any prospectus supplement hereto before making a decision to invest in our securities. See “*Where You Can Find More Information*” and “*Incorporation of Certain Documents by Reference*” below.

## **USE OF PROCEEDS**

Unless otherwise indicated in an accompanying prospectus supplement, we intend to use all the net proceeds from the sale of the securities offered by this prospectus and any related prospectus supplement for general corporate purposes in accordance with our objectives and strategies described in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and other filings with the SEC, which may include:

- acquisitions of assets and businesses;
- funding of ongoing development programs and clinical trials;
- repayment of indebtedness outstanding at that time; and
- general working capital.

Any specific allocation of the net proceeds of an offering of securities to a specific purpose will be determined at the time of such offering and will be described in the related supplement to this prospectus.

## DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK

*The following is a summary of the rights and preferences of our capital stock. While we believe that the following description covers the material terms of our capital stock, the description may not contain all of the information that is important to you. We encourage you to read carefully this entire prospectus, any future related prospectus supplement and certificates of designation relating to the securities, as applicable, our articles of incorporation, as amended (the “charter”) and amended and restated bylaws (the “bylaws”) and the other documents we refer to for a more complete understanding of our capital stock. Copies of our charter and bylaws are incorporated by reference as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. See “Where You Can Find More Information” and “Incorporation of Certain Documents by Reference.”*

### General

Our charter provides that we may issue up to 45,454,546 shares of common stock, \$0.001 par value per share, and 10,000,000 shares of preferred stock, \$0.001 par value per share, 1,000,000 of which are designated as Series A Preferred Stock, 2,500,000 of which are designated as Series B Preferred Stock, and 6,500,000 of which shares of preferred stock are undesignated. As of September 24, 2018, there were issued and outstanding: 9,403,889 shares of common stock, 970,000 shares of Series A Preferred Stock, 1,804,394 shares of Series B Preferred Stock and 3,691,428 shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of warrants, at a weighted average exercise price of \$5.22. Under Nevada law, stockholders are not generally liable for our debts or obligations.

### Shares of Common Stock

#### *Voting Rights*

Our common stock is entitled to one vote per share on all matters submitted to a vote of the stockholders, including the election of directors. Except as otherwise required by law or provided in any resolution adopted by our board of directors with respect to any series of preferred stock, the holders of our common stock will possess all voting power. Generally, all matters to be voted on by stockholders must be approved by a majority (or, in the case of election of directors, by a plurality) of the votes entitled to be cast by all shares of our common stock that are present in person or represented by proxy, subject to any voting rights granted to holders of any preferred stock. Our stockholders do not have cumulative voting rights in the election of directors. Holders of our common stock representing 50% of our capital stock issued, outstanding and entitled to vote, represented in person or by proxy, are necessary to constitute a quorum at any meeting of our stockholders. A vote by the holders of a majority of our outstanding shares is required to effectuate certain fundamental corporate changes such as liquidation, merger or an amendment to our charter.

#### *Dividends*

Subject to the preferential rights of any other class or series of shares of stock created from time to time by our board of directors from time to time, the holders of shares of our common stock will be entitled to such cash dividends, non-cumulative, as may be declared from time to time by our board of directors from funds available therefore. We will not pay any dividends on shares of common stock (other than dividends in the form of common stock) unless and until such time as we pay dividends on the Series B Preferred Stock on an as-converted basis.

#### *Liquidation*

Subject to the preferential rights of any other class or series of shares of stock created from time to time by our board of directors, upon liquidation, dissolution or winding up, the holders of shares of our common stock will be entitled to share ratably in the assets of the Company available for distribution to such holders.

## ***Rights and Preferences***

In the event of any merger or consolidation with or into another company in connection with which shares of our common stock are converted into or exchangeable for shares of stock, other securities or property (including cash), all holders of our common stock will be entitled to receive the same kind and amount of shares of stock and other securities and property (including cash). Holders of our common stock have no pre-emptive, conversion, subscription or other rights and there are no redemption or sinking fund provisions applicable to our common stock. The rights, preferences and privileges of the holders of our common stock are subject to and may be adversely affected by the rights of the holders of shares of any series of our preferred stock that we may designate in the future.

## ***Fully Paid and Nonassessable***

All of our outstanding shares of common stock are duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

## **Shares of Preferred Stock**

The following description sets forth general terms and provisions of the preferred stock to which any prospectus supplement may relate. The statements below describing the preferred stock are in all respects subject to and qualified in their entirety by reference to our charter, bylaws, and any certificate of designation, designating terms of a series of preferred stock. The outstanding shares of our preferred stock have been validly issued, fully paid, and non-assessable. Because our board of directors has the power to establish the preferences, powers and rights of each series of preferred stock, our board of directors may afford the holders of any series of preferred stock preferences, powers and rights, voting or otherwise, senior to the rights of our common stockholders. The issuance of our preferred stock could adversely affect the voting power of holders of common stock and the likelihood that such holders will receive dividend payments and payments upon a liquidation. In addition, the issuance of preferred stock could have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change of control of the Company or other corporate action.

The rights, preferences, privileges and restrictions of our outstanding series of preferred stock are, and of each additional series of preferred stock, when and if issued in the future will be, fixed by the certificate of designation relating to the series. A prospectus supplement, relating to each series, will specify the terms of the preferred stock, as follows:

- the title and stated value of the preferred stock;
- the voting rights of the preferred stock, if applicable;
- the preemptive rights of the preferred stock, if applicable;
- the restrictions on alienability of the preferred stock, if applicable;
- the number of shares offered, the liquidation preference per share and the offering price of the shares;
- liability to further calls or assessment of the preferred stock, if applicable;
- the dividend rate(s), period(s) and payment date(s) or method(s) of calculation applicable to the preferred stock;
- the date from which dividends on the preferred stock will accumulate, if applicable;
- the procedures for any auction and remarketing for the preferred stock, if any;
- the provision for a sinking fund, if any, for the preferred stock;
- the provision for and any restriction on redemption, if applicable, of the preferred stock;
- the provision for and any restriction on repurchase, if applicable, of the preferred stock;
- any listing of the preferred stock on any securities exchange;
- the terms and provisions, if any, upon which the preferred stock will be convertible into common stock, including the conversion price (or manner of calculation) and conversion period;
- the terms under which the rights of the preferred stock may be modified, if applicable;
- any other specific terms, preferences, rights, limitations or restrictions of the preferred stock;
- a discussion of certain material federal income tax considerations applicable to the preferred stock;
- the relative ranking and preferences of the preferred stock as to dividend rights and rights upon the liquidation, dissolution or winding-up of our affairs;
- any limitation on issuance of any series of preferred stock ranking senior to or on a parity with the series of preferred stock as to dividend rights and rights upon the liquidation, dissolution or winding-up of our affairs; and
- any limitations on direct or beneficial ownership and restrictions on transfer of the preferred stock.

**Transfer Agent and Registrar**

The transfer agent and registrar for our common stock and preferred stock is Empire Stock Transfer, Inc.

**Restrictions on Transfer**

Transfers of shares of capital stock of the Company shall be made only (i) by entering upon the stock-transfer books of the Company or (ii) by transfer agents designated to transfer shares of capital stock of the Company.

## DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS

We may issue warrants for the purchase of common stock, preferred stock or debt securities in one or more series, from time to time. We may issue warrants independently or together with common stock, preferred stock and/or debt securities, and the warrants may be attached to or separate from those securities.

The warrants issued, if any, will be evidenced by warrant certificates issued under one or more warrant agreements, which are contracts between us and an agent for the holders of the warrants. The prospectus supplements relating to any warrants being offered pursuant to this prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplements will contain the specific terms of the warrants, as well as the complete warrant agreements and warrant certificates that contain the terms of the warrants. Forms of warrant agreements and warrant certificates containing the terms of the warrants being offered will be incorporated by reference into the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part from reports we file with the SEC.

## DESCRIPTION OF UNITS

As specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, we may issue units consisting of one or more shares of common stock, shares of preferred stock, depositary shares, warrants, or any combination of such securities.

## DESCRIPTION OF RIGHTS

The following description summarizes only the general features of the rights that we may offer from time to time under this prospectus. The specific terms of a series of rights will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to that series of rights along with any general provisions applicable to that series of rights. We may issue rights to our stockholders to purchase shares of our common stock and/or any of the other securities offered hereby. In connection with any offering of rights, each series of rights may be issued under a separate rights agreement to be entered into between us and a bank or trust company, as rights agent. The following description of the rights and any description of the rights in a prospectus supplement may not be complete and is subject to, and qualified in its entirety by reference to, the underlying rights agreement, which we will file with the SEC at or prior to the time of the sale of the rights. You should refer to, and read this summary together with, the rights agreement and the applicable prospectus supplement to review the terms of a particular series of rights. You can obtain copies of any form of rights agreement or other agreement pursuant to which the rights are issued by following the directions described under the caption “*Where You Can Find More Information.*” The applicable prospectus supplement relating to any rights will describe the terms of the offered rights, including, where applicable, the following:

- the date for determining the persons entitled to participate in the rights distribution;
- the exercise price for the rights;
- the aggregate number or amount of underlying securities purchasable upon exercise of the rights;
- the number of rights issued to each stockholder and the number of rights outstanding, if any;
- the extent to which the rights are transferable;
- the date on which the right to exercise the rights will commence and the date on which the rights will expire;
- the extent to which the rights include an over-subscription privilege with respect to unsubscribed securities;
- anti-dilution provisions of the rights, if any; and
- any other material terms of the rights, including terms, procedures and limitations relating to the distribution, exchange and exercise of the rights.

Holders may exercise rights as described in the applicable prospectus supplement. Upon receipt of payment and the rights certificate properly completed and duly executed at the corporate trust office of the rights agent or any other office indicated in the prospectus supplement, we will, as soon as practicable, forward the securities purchasable upon exercise of the rights. If less than all of the rights issued in any rights offering are exercised, we may offer any unsubscribed securities directly to persons other than existing stockholders, to or through agents, underwriters or dealers or through a combination of such methods, including pursuant to standby underwriting arrangements, as described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

## DESCRIPTION OF DEPOSITARY SHARES

### General

We may issue depositary shares, each of which would represent a fractional interest of a share of a particular series of preferred stock. We will deposit shares of preferred stock represented by depositary shares under a separate deposit agreement among the Company, a preferred stock depositary and the holders of the depositary shares. Subject to the terms of the deposit agreement, each owner of a depositary share will possess, in proportion to the fractional interest of a share of preferred stock represented by the depositary share, all the rights and preferences of the preferred stock represented by the depositary shares. Depositary receipts will evidence the depositary shares issued pursuant to the deposit agreement. Immediately after the Company issues and delivers preferred stock to a preferred stock depositary, the preferred stock depositary will issue the depositary receipts.

### Dividends and Other Distributions

The depositary will distribute all cash dividends on the preferred stock to the record holders of the depositary shares. Holders of depositary shares generally must file proofs, certificates and other information and pay charges and expenses of the depositary in connection with distributions. If a distribution on the preferred stock is other than in cash and it is feasible for the depositary to distribute the property it receives, the depositary will distribute the property to the record holders of the depositary shares. If such a distribution is not feasible, the depositary, with our approval, may sell the property and distribute the net proceeds from the sale to the holders of the depositary shares.

### Withdrawal of Stock

Unless we have previously called the underlying preferred stock for redemption or the holder of the depositary shares has converted such shares, a holder of depositary shares may surrender them at the corporate trust office of the depositary in exchange for whole or fractional shares of the underlying preferred stock together with any money or other property represented by the depositary shares. Once a holder has exchanged the depositary shares, the holder may not redeposit the preferred stock and receive depositary shares again. If a depositary receipt presented for exchange into preferred stock represents more shares of preferred stock than the number to be withdrawn, the depositary will deliver a new depositary receipt for the excess number of depositary shares.

### Redemption of Depositary Shares

Whenever we redeem shares of preferred stock held by a depositary, the depositary will redeem the corresponding amount of depositary shares with funds it receives from us for the preferred stock. The depositary will notify the record holders of the depositary shares to be redeemed not less than 30 days nor more than 60 days before the date fixed for redemption at the holders' addresses appearing in the depositary's books. The redemption price per depositary share will be equal to the applicable fraction of the redemption price and any other amounts payable with respect to the preferred stock. If we intend to redeem less than all of the underlying preferred stock, we and the depositary will select the depositary shares to be redeemed on as nearly a pro rata basis as practicable without creating fractional depositary shares or by any other equitable method determined by us.

On the redemption date:

- all dividends relating to the shares of preferred stock called for redemption will cease to accrue;
- we and the depositary will no longer deem the depositary shares called for redemption to be outstanding; and
- all rights of the holders of the depositary shares called for redemption will cease, except the right to receive any money payable upon the redemption and any money or other property to which the holders of the depositary shares are entitled upon redemption.

## **Voting of the Preferred Stock**

When a depositary receives notice regarding a meeting at which the holders of the underlying preferred stock have the right to vote, it will mail that information to the holders of the depositary shares. Each record holder of depositary shares on the record date may then instruct the depositary to exercise its voting rights for the amount of preferred stock represented by that holder's depositary shares. The depositary will vote in accordance with these instructions. The depositary will abstain from voting to the extent it does not receive specific instructions from the holders of depositary shares. A depositary will not be responsible for any failure to carry out any instruction to vote, or for the manner or effect of any vote, as long as any action or non-action is in good faith and does not result from negligence or willful misconduct of the depositary.

## **Liquidation Preference**

In the event of our liquidation, dissolution or winding up, a holder of depositary shares will receive the fraction of the liquidation preference accorded each share of underlying preferred stock represented by the depositary share, in the event such underlying preferred stock is entitled to any such liquidation preference.

## **Conversion of Preferred Stock**

Depositary shares will not themselves be convertible into common stock or any other securities or property of the Company. However, if the underlying preferred stock is convertible, holders of depositary shares may surrender them to the depositary with written instructions to convert the preferred stock represented by their depositary shares into whole shares of common stock, other shares of our preferred stock or other shares of stock, as applicable. Upon receipt of these instructions and any amounts payable in connection with a conversion, we will convert the preferred stock using the same procedures as those provided for delivery of preferred stock. If a holder of depositary shares converts only part of its depositary shares, the depositary will issue a new depositary receipt for any depositary shares not converted. We will not issue fractional shares of common stock upon conversion. If a conversion will result in the issuance of a fractional share, we will pay an amount in cash equal to the value of the fractional interest based upon the closing price of the common stock on the last business day prior to the conversion.

## **Amendment and Termination of a Deposit Agreement**

The Company and the depositary may amend any form of depositary receipt evidencing depositary shares and any provision of a deposit agreement. However, unless the existing holders of at least two-thirds of the applicable depositary shares then outstanding have approved the amendment, we and the depositary may not make any amendment that:

- would materially and adversely alter the rights of the holders of depositary shares; or
- would be materially and adversely inconsistent with the rights granted to the holders of the underlying preferred stock.

Subject to exceptions in the deposit agreement and except in order to comply with applicable law, no amendment may impair the right of any holders of depositary shares to surrender their depositary shares with instructions to deliver the underlying preferred stock and all money and other property represented by the depositary shares. Every holder of outstanding depositary shares at the time any amendment becomes effective who continues to hold the depositary shares will be deemed to consent and agree to the amendment and to be bound by the amended deposit agreement.

We may terminate a deposit agreement upon not less than 30 days prior written notice to the depositary if a majority of each series of preferred stock affected by the termination consents to the termination.

In addition, a deposit agreement will automatically terminate if:

- we have redeemed all underlying preferred stock subject to the agreement;
- a final distribution of the underlying preferred stock in connection with any liquidation, dissolution or winding up has occurred, and the depositary has distributed the distribution to the holders of the depositary shares; or
- each share of the underlying preferred stock has been converted into other capital stock of the Company not represented by depositary shares.

#### **Expenses of a Preferred Stock Depositary**

We will pay all transfer and other taxes and governmental charges and expenses arising in connection with a deposit agreement. In addition, we will generally pay the fees and expenses of a depositary in connection with the performance of its duties. However, holders of depositary shares will pay the fees and expenses of a depositary for any duties requested by the holders that the deposit agreement does not expressly require the depositary to perform.

#### **Resignation and Removal of Depositary**

A depositary may resign at any time by delivering to us notice of its election to resign. We may also remove a depositary at any time. Any resignation or removal will take effect upon the appointment of a successor depositary. We will appoint a successor depositary within 60 days after delivery of the notice of resignation or removal. The successor must be a bank or trust company with its principal office in the U.S. and have a combined capital and surplus of at least \$50 million.

#### **Miscellaneous**

The depositary will forward to the holders of depositary shares any reports and communications from us with respect to the underlying preferred stock. Neither the depositary nor the company will be liable if any law or any circumstances beyond their control prevent or delay them from performing their obligations under a deposit agreement. The obligations of the Company and a depositary under a deposit agreement will be limited to performing their duties in good faith and without negligence in regard to voting of preferred stock, gross negligence or willful misconduct. Neither the Company nor a depositary must prosecute or defend any legal proceeding with respect to any depositary shares or the underlying preferred stock unless they are furnished with satisfactory indemnity.

The Company and any depositary may rely on the written advice of counsel or accountants, or information provided by persons presenting shares of preferred stock for deposit, holders of depositary shares or other persons they believe in good faith to be competent, and on documents they believe in good faith to be genuine and signed by a proper party. In the event a depositary receives conflicting claims, requests or instructions from us and any holders of depositary shares, the depositary will be entitled to act on the claims, requests or instructions received from us.

#### **Depositary**

The prospectus supplement will identify the depositary for the depositary shares.

#### **Listing of the Depositary Shares**

The applicable prospectus supplement will specify whether or not the depositary shares will be listed on any securities exchange.

## DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES

### General

The following description of the terms of our senior debt securities and subordinated debt securities (together, referred to as the “debt securities”), sets forth certain general terms and provisions of the debt securities to which any prospectus supplement may relate. Unless otherwise noted, the general terms and provisions of our debt securities discussed below apply to both our senior debt securities and our subordinated debt securities. Our debt securities may be issued from time to time in one or more series. The particular terms of any series of debt securities and the extent to which the general provisions may apply to a particular series of debt securities will be described in the prospectus supplement relating to that series.

The senior debt securities will be issued under an indenture (the “senior indenture”) between us and a Senior Indenture trustee (the “Senior Indenture Trustee”). The subordinated debt securities will be issued under an indenture (the “subordinated indenture” and, together with the senior indenture, the “indentures”) between us and a Subordinated Indenture trustee (the “Subordinated Indenture Trustee”). The Senior Indenture Trustee and the Subordinated Indenture Trustee are both referred to, individually, as the “trustee”. The senior debt securities will constitute our unsecured and unsubordinated obligations and the subordinated debt securities will constitute our unsecured and subordinated obligations. A detailed description of the subordination provisions is provided below under the caption “- *Ranking and Subordination - Subordination*.” In general, however, if we declare bankruptcy, holders of the senior debt securities will be paid in full before the holders of subordinated debt securities will receive anything.

The statements set forth below are brief summaries of certain provisions contained in the indentures, which summaries do not purport to be complete and are qualified in their entirety by reference to the forms of indentures, which are filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part. Terms used herein that are otherwise not defined shall have the meanings given to them in the indentures. Such defined terms shall be incorporated herein by reference.

The indentures will not limit the amount of debt securities that may be issued under the applicable indenture, and debt securities may be issued under the applicable indenture up to the aggregate principal amount that may be authorized from time to time by us. Any such limit applicable to a particular series will be specified in the prospectus supplement relating to that series.

The prospectus supplement relating to any series of debt securities in respect of which this prospectus is being delivered will contain the following terms, among others, for each such series of debt securities:

- the designation and issue date of the debt securities;
- the date or dates on which the principal amount of the debt securities is payable;
- the rate or rates (or manner of calculation thereof), if any, per annum at which the debt securities will bear interest, if any, the date or dates from which interest will accrue and the interest payment date or dates for the debt securities;
- any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the debt securities which may be authenticated and delivered under the applicable indenture;
- the period or periods within which, the redemption price or prices or the repayment price or prices, as the case may be, at which, and the terms and conditions upon which, the debt securities may be redeemed at the Company’s option or the option of the holder of such debt securities;
- the obligation, if any, of the Company to purchase the debt securities pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provisions or at the option of a holder of such debt securities and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which such debt securities will be purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;
- if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof, the denominations in which the debt securities will be issuable;
- provisions, if any, with regard to the conversion or exchange of the debt securities, at the option of the holders of such debt securities or the Company, as the case may be, for or into new securities of a different series, common stock or other securities;
- if other than U.S. dollars, the currency or currencies or units based on or related to currencies in which the debt securities will be denominated and in which payments of principal of, and any premium and interest on, such debt securities shall or may be payable;

- if the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the debt securities are to be payable, at the election of the Company or a holder of such debt securities, in a currency (including a composite currency) other than that in which such debt securities are stated to be payable, the period or periods within which, and the terms and conditions upon which, such election may be made;
- if the amount of payments of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the debt securities may be determined with reference to an index based on a currency (including a composite currency) other than that in which such debt securities are stated to be payable, the manner in which such amounts shall be determined;
- provisions, if any, related to the exchange of the debt securities, at the option of the holders of such debt securities, for other securities of the same series of the same aggregate principal amount or of a different authorized series or different authorized denomination or denominations, or both;
- the portion of the principal amount of the debt securities, if other than the principal amount thereof, which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof as more fully described under the section “*Events of Default, Notice and Waiver*” below;
- whether the debt securities will be issued in the form of global securities and, if so, the identity of the depositary with respect to such global securities;
- if the debt securities will be guaranteed, the terms and conditions of such guarantees and provisions for the accession of the guarantors to certain obligations under the applicable indenture;
- with respect to subordinated debt securities only, the amendment or modification of the subordination provisions in the subordinated indenture with respect to the debt securities; and
- any other specific terms.

We may issue debt securities of any series at various times and we may reopen any series for further issuances from time to time without notice to existing holders of securities of that series.

Some of the debt securities may be issued as original issue discount debt securities. Original issue discount debt securities bear no interest or bear interest at below-market rates. These are sold at a discount below their stated principal amount. If we issue these securities, the prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities will describe any special tax, accounting or other information which we think is important. We encourage you to consult with your own tax and financial advisors on these important matters.

Unless we specify otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, the covenants contained in the indentures will not provide special protection to holders of debt securities if we enter into a highly leveraged transaction, recapitalization or restructuring.

Unless otherwise set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, interest on outstanding debt securities will be paid to holders of record on the date that is 15 days prior to the date such interest is to be paid or, if not a business day, the next preceding business day. Unless otherwise specified in the prospectus supplement, debt securities will be issued in fully registered form only. Unless otherwise specified in the prospectus supplement, the principal amount of the debt securities will be payable at the corporate trust office of the trustee in New York, New York. The debt securities may be presented for transfer or exchange at such office unless otherwise specified in the prospectus supplement, subject to the limitations provided in the applicable indenture, without any service charge, but we may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charges payable in connection therewith.

## **Ranking and Subordination**

### ***General***

The subordinated debt securities and the related guarantees will effectively rank junior in right of payment to any of our or the guarantors' current and future secured obligations to the extent of the value of the assets securing such obligations. The debt securities and the guarantees will be effectively subordinated to all existing and future liabilities, including indebtedness and trade payables, of our non-guarantor subsidiaries. Unless otherwise set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, the indentures will not limit the amount of unsecured indebtedness or other liabilities that can be incurred by our non-guarantor subsidiaries.

## ***Ranking of Debt Securities***

The senior debt securities described in this prospectus will be unsecured, senior obligations of the Company and will rank equally with the Company's other unsecured and unsubordinated obligations. Any guarantees of the senior debt securities will be unsecured and senior obligations of each of the guarantors, and will rank equally with all other unsecured and unsubordinated obligations of such guarantors. The subordinated debt securities will be unsecured, subordinated obligations and any guarantees of the subordinated debt securities will be unsecured and subordinated obligations of each of the guarantors.

## ***Subordination***

If issued, the indebtedness evidenced by the subordinated debt securities will be subordinate to the prior payment in full of all our Senior Indebtedness (as defined below). During the continuance beyond any applicable grace period of any default in the payment of principal, premium, interest or any other payment due on any of our Senior Indebtedness, we may not make any payment of principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on the subordinated debt securities. In addition, upon any payment or distribution of our assets upon any dissolution, winding up, liquidation or reorganization, the payment of the principal of, or premium, if any, and interest on the subordinated debt securities will be subordinated to the extent provided in the subordinated indenture in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all our Senior Indebtedness. Because of this subordination, if we dissolve or otherwise liquidate, holders of our subordinated debt securities may receive less, ratably, than holders of our Senior Indebtedness. The subordination provisions do not prevent the occurrence of an event of default under the subordinated indenture.

The subordination provisions also apply in the same way to any guarantor with respect to the Senior Indebtedness of such guarantor.

The term "Senior Indebtedness" of a person means with respect to such person the principal of, premium, if any, interest on, and any other payment due pursuant to any of the following, whether outstanding on the date of the subordinated indenture or incurred by that person in the future:

- all of the indebtedness of that person for borrowed money, including any indebtedness secured by a mortgage or other lien which is (1) given to secure all or part of the purchase price of property subject to the mortgage or lien, whether given to the vendor of that property or to another lender, or (2) existing on property at the time that person acquires it;
- all of the indebtedness of that person evidenced by notes, debentures, bonds or other similar instruments sold by that person for money;
- all of the lease obligations which are capitalized on the books of that person in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
- all indebtedness of others of the kinds described in the first two bullet points above and all lease obligations of others of the kind described in the third bullet point above, in each case, that the person, in any manner, assumes or guarantees or that the person in effect guarantees through an agreement to purchase, whether that agreement is contingent or otherwise; and
- all renewals, extensions or refundings of indebtedness of the kinds described in the first, second or fourth bullet point above and all renewals or extensions of leases of the kinds described in the third or fourth bullet point above; unless, in the case of any particular indebtedness, lease, renewal, extension or refunding, the instrument or lease creating or evidencing it or the assumption or guarantee relating to it expressly provides that such indebtedness, lease, renewal, extension or refunding is not superior in right of payment to the subordinated debt securities. Our senior debt securities, and any unsubordinated guarantee obligations of ours or any guarantor to which we and the guarantors are a party, including the guarantors' guarantees of our debt securities and other indebtedness for borrowed money, constitute Senior Indebtedness for purposes of the subordinated indenture.

## ***Consolidation, Merger, Conveyance or Transfer on Certain Terms***

Except as described in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to such debt securities, we will not consolidate with or merge into any other entity or convey or transfer our properties and assets substantially as an entirety to any entity, unless:

- (1) the entity formed by such consolidation or into which we are merged or the entity that acquires by conveyance or transfer our properties and assets substantially as an entirety shall be organized and existing under the laws of the U.S. or any state or the District of Columbia, and will expressly assume, by supplemental indenture, executed and delivered to the trustee, in form reasonably satisfactory to the trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on all the debt securities and the performance of every covenant of the applicable indenture (as supplemented from time to time) on our part to be performed or observed;

- (2) immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no Event of Default (as defined below), and no event which, after notice or lapse of time, or both, would become an Event of Default, shall have happened and be continuing; and
- (3) we have delivered to the trustee an officers' certificate and an opinion of counsel each stating that such consolidation, merger, conveyance or transfer and such supplemental indenture comply with the requirements set forth in paragraphs (1) and (2) above and that all conditions precedent relating to such transaction have been complied with.

Upon any consolidation or merger, or any conveyance or transfer of our properties and assets substantially as an entirety as set forth above, the successor person formed by such consolidation or into which we are merged or to which such conveyance or transfer is made shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of ours under the applicable indenture with the same effect as if such successor had been named in the applicable indenture. In the event of any such conveyance or transfer, we, as the predecessor, shall be discharged from all obligations and covenants under the applicable indenture and the debt securities issued under such indenture and may be dissolved, wound up or liquidated at any time thereafter.

#### **Certain Covenants**

Any covenants pertaining to a series of debt securities will be set forth in a prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities.

Except as described in the prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, the indentures and the debt securities do not contain any covenants or other provisions designed to afford holders of debt securities protection in the event of a recapitalization or highly leveraged transaction involving us.

#### **Certain Definitions**

The following are certain of the terms defined in the indentures:

"Comparable Treasury Issue" means, with respect to the debt securities, the U.S. Treasury security selected by an Independent Investment Banker as having a maturity comparable to the remaining term, or the Remaining Life, of the debt securities being redeemed that would be utilized, at the time of selection and in accordance with customary financial practice, in pricing new issues of corporate debt securities of comparable maturity to the Remaining Life of such debt securities.

"Comparable Treasury Price" means, with respect to any redemption date for the debt securities: (1) the average of two Reference Treasury Dealer Quotations for that redemption date, after excluding the highest and lowest of four such Reference Treasury Dealer Quotations; or (2) if the trustee obtains fewer than four Reference Treasury Dealer Quotations, the average of all quotations obtained by the trustee.

"GAAP" means generally accepted accounting principles as such principles are in effect in the U.S. as of the date of the applicable indenture.

"Independent Investment Banker" means one of the Reference Treasury Dealers, to be appointed by us.

"Reference Treasury Dealer" means four primary U.S. Government securities dealers to be selected by us.

"Reference Treasury Dealer Quotations" means, with respect to each Reference Treasury Dealer and any redemption date, the average, as determined by the trustee, of the bid and asked prices for the Comparable Treasury Issue, expressed in each case as a percentage of its principal amount, quoted in writing to the trustee by such Reference Treasury Dealer at 3:00 p.m., New York City time, on the third business day preceding such redemption date.

"Remaining Scheduled Payments" means, with respect to each debt security to be redeemed, the remaining scheduled payments of the principal thereof and interest thereon that would be due after the related redemption date but for such redemption; provided, however, that, if such redemption date is not an interest payment date with respect to such debt security, the amount of the next succeeding scheduled interest payment thereon will be deemed to be reduced by the amount of interest accrued thereon to such redemption date.

“Significant Subsidiary” means any Subsidiary which would be a “significant subsidiary” as defined in Rule 1-02 of Regulation S-X, promulgated pursuant to the Securities Act, as in effect on the date of the applicable indenture.

“Subsidiary” means, with respect to any person, any corporation more than 50% of the voting stock of which is owned directly or indirectly by such person, and any partnership, association, joint venture or other entity in which such person owns more than 50% of the equity interests or has the power to elect a majority of the board of directors or other governing body.

“Treasury Rate” means, with respect to any redemption date for the debt securities: (1) the yield, under the heading which represents the average for the immediately preceding week, appearing in the most recently published statistical release designated “H.15(5 19)” or any successor publication which is published weekly by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System and which establishes yields on actively traded U.S. Treasury debt securities adjusted to constant maturity under the caption “Treasury Constant Maturities,” for the maturity corresponding to the Comparable Treasury Issue; provided that if no maturity is within three months before or after the maturity date for the debt securities, yields for the two published maturities most closely corresponding to the Comparable Treasury Issue will be determined and the Treasury Rate will be interpolated or extrapolated from those yields on a straight line basis, rounding to the nearest month; or (2) if that release, or any successor release, is not published during the week preceding the calculation date or does not contain such yields, the rate per annum equal to the semiannual equivalent yield to maturity of the Comparable Treasury Issue, calculated using a price for the Comparable Treasury Issue (expressed as a percentage of its principal amount) equal to the Comparable Treasury Price for that redemption date. The Treasury Rate will be calculated on the third business day preceding the redemption date.

### **Optional Redemption**

Unless we specify otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, we may redeem any of the debt securities as a whole at any time or in part from time to time, at our option, on at least 15 days, but not more than 45 days, prior notice mailed to the registered address of each holder of the debt securities to be redeemed, at respective redemption prices equal to the greater of:

- 100% of the principal amount of the debt securities to be redeemed, and
- the sum of the present values of the Remaining Scheduled Payments (as defined below) discounted to the redemption date, on a semi-annual basis, assuming a 360 day year consisting of twelve 30 day months, at the Treasury Rate plus the number, if any, of basis points specified in the applicable prospectus supplement; plus, in each case, accrued interest to the date of redemption that has not been paid, such redemption price referred to as the “Redemption Price”.

On and after the redemption date, interest will cease to accrue on the debt securities or any portion thereof called for redemption, unless we default in the payment of the Redemption Price, and accrued interest. On or before the redemption date, we shall deposit with a paying agent, or the applicable trustee, money sufficient to pay the Redemption Price of and accrued interest on the debt securities to be redeemed on such date. If we elect to redeem less than all of the debt securities of a series, then the trustee will select the particular debt securities of such series to be redeemed in a manner it deems appropriate and fair.

### **Defeasance**

Except as otherwise set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, each indenture will provide that we, at our option,

- (a) will be discharged from any and all obligations in respect of any series of debt securities (except in each case for certain obligations to register the transfer or exchange of debt securities, replace stolen, lost or mutilated debt securities, maintain paying agencies and hold monies for payment in trust), or
- (b) need not comply with any restrictive covenants described in a prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, the guarantors will be released from the guarantees and certain Events of Default (other than those arising out of the failure to pay interest or principal on the debt securities of a particular series and certain events of bankruptcy, insolvency and reorganization) will no longer constitute Events of Default with respect to such series of debt securities, in each case, if we deposit with the trustee, in trust, money or the equivalent in securities of the government which issued the currency in which the debt securities are denominated or government agencies backed by the full faith and credit of such government, or a combination thereof, which through the payment of interest thereon and principal thereof in accordance with their terms will provide money in an amount sufficient to pay all the principal (including any mandatory sinking fund payments) of, and interest on, such series on the dates such payments are due in accordance with the terms of such series.

To exercise any such option, we are required, among other things, to deliver to the trustee an opinion of counsel to the effect that the deposit and related defeasance would not cause the holders of such series to recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes and, in the case of a discharge pursuant to clause (a) above, accompanied by a ruling to such effect received from or published by the U.S. Internal Revenue Service, or IRS.

In addition, we are required to deliver to the trustee an officers' certificate stating that such deposit was not made by us with the intent of preferring the holders over other creditors of ours or with the intent of defeating, hindering, delaying or defrauding creditors of ours or others.

#### **Events of Default, Notice and Waiver**

Except as otherwise set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, each indenture will provide that, if an Event of Default specified therein with respect to any series of debt securities issued thereunder shall have happened and be continuing, either the trustee thereunder or the holders of 33 1/3% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of such series (or 33 1/3% in aggregate principal amount of all outstanding debt securities under such indenture, in the case of certain Events of Default affecting all series of debt securities issued under such indenture) may declare the principal of all the debt securities of such series to be due and payable.

Except as otherwise set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, an "Event of Default" in respect of any series will be defined in the indentures as being any one of the following events:

- default in payment of principal of, or premium, if any, on, or any sinking or purchase fund or analogous obligation with respect to, debt securities of such series when due at their stated maturity, by declaration or acceleration, when called for redemption or otherwise;
- default for 30 days in payment of any interest installment with respect to such series;
- default for 90 days after written notice to us by the trustee thereunder or by holders of 33 1/3% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of such series in the performance, or breach, of any covenant or warranty pertaining to debt securities of such series; and
- certain events of bankruptcy, insolvency and reorganization with respect to us or any Significant Subsidiary of ours which is organized under the laws of the U.S. or any political sub-division thereof or the entry of an order ordering the winding up or liquidation of our affairs.

Each indenture will provide that the trustee thereunder will, within 90 days after the occurrence of a default with respect to the debt securities of any series issued under such indenture, give to the holders of the debt securities of such series notice of all uncured and unwaived defaults known to it; provided, however, that, except in the case of default in the payment of principal of, premium, if any, or interest, if any, on any of the debt securities of such series, the trustee will be protected in withholding such notice if it in good faith determines that the withholding of such notice is in the interests of the holders of the debt securities of such series. The term "default" for the purpose of this provision means any event which is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default with respect to debt securities of such series.

Each indenture will contain provisions entitling the trustee under such indenture, subject to the duty of the trustee during an Event of Default to act with the required standard of care, to be indemnified to its reasonable satisfaction by the holders of the debt securities before proceeding to exercise any right or power under the applicable indenture at the request of holders of such debt securities.

Each indenture will provide that the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series issued under such indenture may direct the time, method and place of conducting proceedings for remedies available to the trustee or exercising any trust or power conferred on the trustee in respect of such series, subject to certain conditions.

Except as otherwise set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to the debt securities, in certain cases, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series may waive, on behalf of the holders of all debt securities of such series, any past default or Event of Default with respect to the debt securities of such series except, among other things, a default not theretofore cured in payment of the principal of, or premium, if any, or interest, if any, on any of the senior debt securities of such series or payment of any sinking or purchase fund or analogous obligations with respect to such senior debt securities.

Each indenture will include a covenant that we will file annually with the trustee a certificate of no default or specifying any default that exists.

#### **Modification of the Indentures**

Except as set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to the debt securities, we and the trustee may, without the consent of the holders of the debt securities issued under the indenture governing such debt securities, enter into indentures supplemental to the applicable indenture for, among others, one or more of the following purposes:

- (1) to evidence the succession of another person to us or to a guarantor, if any, and the assumption by such successor of our or the guarantor's obligations under the applicable indenture and the debt securities of any series;
- (2) to add to our covenants or those of any guarantor, if any, or to surrender any of our rights or powers or those of any guarantor for the benefit of the holders of debt securities of any or all series issued under such indenture;
- (3) to cure any ambiguity, to correct or supplement any provision in the applicable indenture which may be inconsistent with any other provision therein, or to make any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under such indenture;
- (4) to add to the applicable indenture any provisions that may be expressly permitted by the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, or the TIA, excluding the provisions referred to in Section 316(a)(2) of the TIA as in effect at the date as of which the applicable indenture was executed or any corresponding provision in any similar federal statute hereafter enacted;
- (5) to establish the form or terms of any series of debt securities to be issued under the applicable indenture, to provide for the issuance of any series of debt securities and/or to add to the rights of the holders of debt securities;
- (6) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of any successor trustee with respect to one or more series of debt securities or to add or change any of the provisions of the applicable indenture as shall be necessary to facilitate the administration of the trusts thereunder by one or more trustees in accordance with the applicable indenture;
- (7) to provide any additional Events of Default;
- (8) to provide for uncertificated securities in addition to or in place of certificated securities; provided that the uncertificated securities are issued in registered form for certain federal tax purposes;
- (9) to provide for the terms and conditions of converting those debt securities that are convertible into common stock or another such similar security;
- (10) to secure any series of debt securities;
- (11) to add guarantees in respect of any series or all of the debt securities;
- (12) to make any change necessary to comply with any requirement of the SEC in connection with the qualification of the applicable indenture or any supplemental indenture under the TIA; and
- (13) to make any other change that does not adversely affect the rights of the holders of the debt securities.

No supplemental indenture for the purpose identified in clauses (2), (3) or (5) above may be entered into if to do so would adversely affect the rights of the holders of debt securities of any series issued under the same indenture in any material respect.

Except as set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to such series of debt securities, each indenture will contain provisions permitting us and the trustee under such indenture, with the consent of the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of all series issued under such indenture to be affected voting as a single class, to execute supplemental indentures for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing or eliminating any of the provisions of the applicable indenture or modifying the rights of the holders of the debt securities of such series to be affected, except that no such supplemental indenture may, without the consent of the holders of affected debt securities, among other things:

- change the maturity of the principal of, or the maturity of any premium on, or any installment of interest on, any such debt security, or reduce the principal amount or the interest or any premium of any such debt securities, or change the method of computing the amount of principal or interest on any such debt securities on any date or change any place of payment where, or the currency in which, any debt securities or any premium or interest thereon is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after the maturity of principal or premium, as the case may be;

- reduce the percentage in principal amount of any such debt securities the consent of whose holders is required for any supplemental indenture, waiver of compliance with certain provisions of the applicable indenture or certain defaults under the applicable indenture;
- modify any of the provisions of the applicable indenture related to (i) the requirement that the holders of debt securities issued under such indenture consent to certain amendments of the applicable indenture, (ii) the waiver of past defaults and (iii) the waiver of certain covenants, except to increase the percentage of holders required to make such amendments or grant such waivers; or
- impair or adversely affect the right of any holder to institute suit for the enforcement of any payment on, or with respect to, such senior debt securities on or after the maturity of such debt securities.

In addition, the subordinated indenture will provide that we may not make any change in the terms of the subordination of the subordinated debt securities of any series in a manner adverse in any material respect to the holders of any series of subordinated debt securities without the consent of each holder of subordinated debt securities that would be adversely affected.

### **The Trustee**

The trustee shall be named in the applicable prospectus supplement.

### **Governing Law**

The indentures will be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the laws of the State of New York.

### **Global Securities**

We may issue debt securities through global securities. A global security is a security, typically held by a depositary, that represents the beneficial interests of a number of purchasers of the security. If we do issue global securities, the following procedures will apply.

We will deposit global securities with the depositary identified in the prospectus supplement. After we issue a global security, the depositary will credit on its book-entry registration and transfer system the respective principal amounts of the debt securities represented by the global security to the accounts of persons who have accounts with the depositary. These account holders are known as “participants.” The underwriters or agents participating in the distribution of the debt securities will designate the accounts to be credited. Only a participant or a person who holds an interest through a participant may be the beneficial owner of a global security. Ownership of beneficial interests in the global security will be shown on, and the transfer of that ownership will be effected only through, records maintained by the depositary and its participants.

We and the trustee will treat the depositary or its nominee as the sole owner or holder of the debt securities represented by a global security. Except as set forth below, owners of beneficial interests in a global security will not be entitled to have the debt securities represented by the global security registered in their names. They also will not receive or be entitled to receive physical delivery of the debt securities in definitive form and will not be considered the owners or holders of the debt securities.

Principal, any premium and any interest payments on debt securities represented by a global security registered in the name of a depositary or its nominee will be made to the depositary or its nominee as the registered owner of the global security.

We expect that the depositary, upon receipt of any payments, will immediately credit participants’ accounts with payments in amounts proportionate to their respective beneficial interests in the principal amount of the global security as shown on the depositary’s records. We also expect that payments by participants to owners of beneficial interests in the global security will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with the securities held for the accounts of customers registered in “street names,” and will be the responsibility of the participants.

If the depositary is at any time unwilling or unable to continue as depositary and a successor depositary is not appointed by us within 90 days, we will issue registered securities in exchange for the global security. In addition, we may at any time in our sole discretion determine not to have any of the debt securities of a series represented by global securities. In that event, we will issue debt securities of that series in definitive form in exchange for the global securities.

## CERTAIN PROVISIONS OF THE NEVADA REVISED STATUTES AND OUR CHARTER AND BYLAWS

*The following summary description of certain provisions of the Nevada Revised Statutes (“NRS”) and our charter and bylaws do not purport to be complete and are subject to and qualified in their entirety by reference to the NRS and the actual provisions of our charter and our bylaws, copies of which are incorporated by reference as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. See “Where You Can Find More Information” and “Incorporation of Certain Documents by Reference.”*

### **Our Board of Directors**

Our bylaws and charter provide that the number of directors we have may be established by our board of directors but may not be less than 1, nor more than 15. Pursuant to board action, our board is currently composed of seven directors — two of whom are affiliated and five of whom are independent as of the date hereof. Our bylaws provide that any vacancy may be filled only by a majority of the remaining directors. Any individual appointed to fill such a vacancy will serve until the next annual meeting of stockholders when a successor is duly elected and qualified.

Pursuant to our bylaws, each of our directors is elected by holders of our common stock entitled to vote and called to serve until the next annual meeting of stockholders when his or her successor is duly elected and qualified. Holders of shares of common stock have no right to cumulative voting in the election of directors. Consequently, at each annual meeting of stockholders, the holders of a plurality of the shares of common stock entitled to vote are able to elect all of our directors. Holders of our preferred stock do not have voting rights, except that holders of our Series B Preferred Stock have certain voting rights under limited circumstances.

### **Removal of Directors**

Our bylaws provide that a director may be removed for cause and only by the affirmative vote of the holders of shares entitled to cast at least two thirds of all the votes of common stockholders entitled to be cast generally in the election of directors. This provision, when coupled with the power of our board of directors to fill vacancies on the board of directors, precludes stockholders from (1) removing incumbent directors except upon a substantial affirmative vote and (2) filling the vacancies created by such removal with their own nominees.

### **Business Combinations**

The “business combination” provisions of Sections 78.411 to 78.444, inclusive, of the NRS, generally prohibit a Nevada corporation with at least 200 stockholders from engaging in various “combination” transactions with any interested stockholder for a period of two years after the date of the transaction in which the person became an interested stockholder, unless the corporation’s board of directors approves the transaction by which the stockholder becomes an interested stockholder in advance, or the proposed combination in advance of the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder. The proposed combination may be approved after the stockholder becomes an interested stockholder with preapproval by the board of directors and a vote at a special or annual meeting of stockholders holding at least 60 percent of the voting power not owned by the interested stockholder or its affiliates or associates. A “combination” is generally defined to include mergers or consolidations or any sale, lease exchange, mortgage, pledge, transfer, or other disposition, in one transaction or a series of transactions, with an “interested stockholder” (a) having an aggregate market value equal to 5% or more of the aggregate market value of the assets of the corporation, (b) having an aggregate market value equal to 5% or more of the aggregate market value of all outstanding shares of the corporation, or (c) representing 10% or more of the earning power or net income of the corporation. In general, an “interested stockholder” is any person who, together with affiliates and associates, beneficially owns (or within two years, did own) 10% or more of a corporation’s voting stock. After the two-year moratorium period, additional stockholder approvals or fair value requirements must be met by the interested stockholder up to four years after the stockholder became an interested stockholder.

The statute could be used to prohibit or delay mergers or other takeover or change in control attempts and, accordingly, may discourage attempts to acquire our Company even though such a transaction may offer our stockholders the opportunity to sell their stock at a price above the prevailing market price. Our charter states that we have elected not to be governed by the “business combination” provisions, therefore such provisions currently do not apply to us.

## **Control Share Acquisitions**

The “control share” provisions of Sections 78.378 to 78.3793, inclusive, of the NRS apply to Nevada corporations with at least 200 stockholders, including at least 100 stockholders of record who are Nevada residents, and that conduct business directly or indirectly in Nevada, including through an affiliated corporation. The control share statute prohibits an acquirer, under certain circumstances, from voting its shares of a target corporation’s stock after crossing certain ownership threshold percentages, unless the acquirer obtains approval of the target corporation’s disinterested stockholders. The statute specifies three thresholds: one-fifth or more but less than one-third, one-third but less than a majority, and a majority or more, of the outstanding voting power. Generally, once an acquirer crosses one of the above thresholds, those shares in an offer or acquisition and acquired within 90 days thereof become “control shares” and such control shares are deprived of the right to vote until disinterested stockholders restore the right. These provisions also provide that if control shares are accorded full voting rights and the acquiring person has acquired a majority or more of all voting power, all other stockholders who do not vote in favor of authorizing voting rights to the control shares are entitled to demand payment for the fair value of their shares in accordance with statutory procedures established for dissenters’ rights.

A corporation may elect to not be governed by, or “opt out” of, the control share provisions by making an election in its articles of incorporation or bylaws, provided that the opt-out election must be in place on the 10th day following the date an acquiring person has acquired a controlling interest, that is, crossing any of the three thresholds described above. We have not opted out of the control share statutes, and will be subject to these statutes if we are an “issuing corporation” as defined in such statutes. As we currently have fewer than 100 stockholders of record who are residents of Nevada, we do not believe that we are an “issuing corporation” as defined by the control share statutes.

The effect of the Nevada control share statutes is that the acquiring person, and those acting in association with the acquiring person, will obtain only such voting rights in the control shares as are conferred by a resolution of the stockholders at an annual or special meeting. The Nevada control share law, if applicable, could have the effect of discouraging takeovers of our Company.

## **Meetings of Stockholders**

Pursuant to our bylaws, a meeting of our stockholders for the election of directors and the transaction of any business will be held annually on a date and at the time set by our board of directors. In addition, the board of directors is authorized, with the approval of a majority of the entire board of directors, to call a special meeting of our stockholders.

## **Amendment to Our Charter and Bylaws**

Pursuant to the NRS, our charter may be amended with the approval of the board of directors or the affirmative vote of a majority of the stockholders entitled to vote. In furtherance and not in limitation of the powers conferred by the NRS and our charter, our bylaws expressly authorize our board of directors to adopt, amend and repeal the bylaws. This authority is subject to the power of our stockholders to adopt, amend or repeal the bylaws upon the affirmative vote of the holders of at least two-thirds of the voting power of the issued and outstanding stock entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, voting together as a single class, in addition to the affirmative vote of the holders of any class or series of the shares of capital stock of the Company as may be required by law, our charter, our bylaws or our preferred stock.

## **Dissolution**

Pursuant to the NRS, our dissolution must be approved by the board of directors along with the affirmative vote of the holders of not less than a majority of all of the shares entitled to cast a vote on the matter.

## **Advance Notice of Director Nominations and New Business**

Our bylaws provide that, with respect to an annual meeting of stockholders, nominations of individuals for election to the board of directors and the proposal of other business to be considered by stockholders may be made only (1) pursuant to our notice of the meeting, (2) by or at the direction of our board of directors or (3) by a stockholder who was a stockholder of record at the time of giving his notice who is entitled to vote at the meeting on the election of directors or on the proposal of other business, as the case may be, and has complied with the advance notice provisions set forth in our bylaws.

With respect to special meetings of stockholders, only the business specified in our notice of meeting may be brought before the meeting. Nominations of individuals for election to our board of directors may be made only (1) by or at the direction of our board of directors or (2) provided that the board of directors has determined that directors will be elected at such meeting, by a stockholder who was a stockholder of record at the time of giving his notice and who is entitled to vote at the meeting and has complied with the advance notice provisions set forth in our bylaws.

#### **Anti-takeover Effect of Certain Provisions of Nevada Law and of Our Charter and Bylaws**

Our charter and bylaws and Nevada law contain provisions that may delay, defer or prevent a change in control or other transaction that might involve a premium price for shares of our common stock or otherwise be in the best interests of our stockholders, including business combination provisions, the ability of our board of directors to authorize undesignated preferred stock, supermajority vote requirements and advance notice requirements for director nominations and stockholder proposals. Likewise, if the provision in the bylaws opting out of the business combination provisions of the NRS were rescinded or if we were to opt in, these provisions of the NRS could have similar anti-takeover effects. See “*Business Combinations*” and “*Control Share Acquisitions*” above.

These provisions are expected to discourage coercive takeover practices and inadequate takeover bids. These provisions are also designed to encourage persons seeking to acquire control of us to first negotiate with our board of directors. We believe that the benefits of increased protection of our potential ability to negotiate with the proponent of an unfriendly or unsolicited proposal to acquire or restructure us outweigh the disadvantages of discouraging these proposals because negotiation of these proposals could result in an improvement of their terms.

#### **Indemnification of Directors and Officers**

Nevada law provides that a Nevada corporation may indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed proceeding, except an action by or in the right of the corporation, by reason of the fact that such person is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation or other enterprise, against expenses, including attorneys’ fees, judgments, fines and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred by such person in connection with the proceeding, if such person:

- is not liable for breach of his or her fiduciary duties to the corporation; or
- acted in good faith and in a manner which he or she reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe his or her conduct was unlawful.

In addition, a Nevada corporation may indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action by or in the right of the corporation to procure a judgment in its favor by reason of the fact that such person is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation or other enterprise against expenses, including amounts paid in settlement and attorneys’ fees actually and reasonably incurred by such person in connection with the defense or settlement of the action, if he or she:

- is not liable for breach of his or her fiduciary duties to the corporation; or
- acted in good faith and in a manner which he or she reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation.

Under Nevada law, indemnification may not be made for any claim as to which such a person has been adjudged by a court of competent jurisdiction, after exhaustion of all appeals therefrom, to be liable to the corporation or for amounts paid in settlement to the corporation, unless and only to the extent that a court of competent jurisdiction determines that in view of all the circumstances of the case, the person is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnity for such expenses as the court deems proper.

To the extent that a director, officer, employee or agent of a corporation has been successful on the merits or otherwise in defense of any non-derivative proceeding or any derivative proceeding, or in defense of any claim, issue or matter therein, the corporation shall indemnify such person against expenses, including attorneys' fees, actually and reasonably incurred in connection with the defense.

Further, Nevada law permits a Nevada corporation to purchase and maintain insurance or to make other financial arrangements on behalf of any person who is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation or other enterprise for any liability asserted against him or her and liability and expenses incurred by him or her in his or her capacity as a director, officer, employee or agent, or arising out of his or her status as such, whether or not the corporation has the authority to indemnify such person against such liability and expenses.

Under our charter and bylaws, we are obligated to indemnify any director, officer, employee or agent of the company to the fullest extent permitted by the NRS, as described above. We have entered into separate indemnification agreements with our directors and executive officers, in addition to the indemnification provided for in our charter and bylaws. These agreements, among other things, require us to indemnify our directors and executive officers who have met the standards of conduct that make it permissible under the NRS for us to indemnify the claimant for certain expenses, including attorneys' fees, judgments, fines and settlement amounts incurred by such person in any action or proceeding arising out of their services as one of our directors, officers, employees or agents, or any of our subsidiaries or any other company or enterprise to which the person provides services at our request. We believe that these charter and bylaw provisions and indemnification agreements are necessary to attract and retain qualified persons as directors.

In addition, indemnification is required to continue as to a person who has ceased to be a director or officer and inures to the benefit of his or her heirs, executors and administrators. Subject to the exceptions detailed below, we may indemnify a person seeking indemnification in connection with a proceeding (or part thereof) initiated by the person seeking indemnification only if the proceeding (or part thereof) was authorized by our board of directors. We may indemnify any employee or agent of us to an extent greater than required by law only if and to the extent that our directors, in their discretion, may determine.

If we do not pay a claim for indemnification within 60 days after a written claim has been received by us or pay an advancement of expenses under our bylaws in full within 20 days after a written claim has been received by us, the claimant may bring suit against us to recover the unpaid amount of the claim and, if successful in whole or in part, the claimant also will be entitled to be paid the expense of prosecuting such claim to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law. In any such action, we would have the burden of proving that the claimant is not entitled to the requested indemnification or advancement of expenses.

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to our directors, officers and controlling persons pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, we have been advised that in the opinion of the SEC this indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is therefore unenforceable.

## PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

We may sell the securities offered by this prospectus from time to time in one or more transactions, including without limitation:

- directly to purchasers;
- through agents;
- to or through underwriters or dealers; or
- through a combination of these methods.

A distribution of the securities offered by this prospectus may also be effected through the issuance of derivative securities, including without limitation, warrants, exchangeable securities, forward delivery contracts and the writing of options.

In addition, the manner in which we may sell some or all of the securities covered by this prospectus includes, without limitation, through:

- a block trade in which a broker-dealer will attempt to sell as agent, but may position or resell a portion of the block, as principal, in order to facilitate the transaction;
- purchases by a broker-dealer, as principal, and resale by the broker-dealer for its account;
- ordinary brokerage transactions and transactions in which a broker solicits purchasers; or
- privately negotiated transactions.

We may also enter into hedging transactions. For example, we may:

- enter into transactions with a broker-dealer or affiliate thereof in connection with which such broker-dealer or affiliate will engage in short sales of securities pursuant to this prospectus, in which case such broker-dealer or affiliate may use common stock received from us to close out its short positions;
- sell securities short and redeliver such securities to close out our short positions;
- enter into option or other types of transactions that require us to deliver common stock to a broker-dealer or an affiliate thereof, who will then resell or transfer the common stock under this prospectus; or
- loan or pledge the common stock to a broker-dealer or an affiliate thereof, who may sell the loaned shares or, in an event of default in the case of a pledge, sell the pledged shares pursuant to this prospectus.

In addition, we may enter into derivative or hedging transactions with third parties, or sell securities not covered by this prospectus to third parties in privately negotiated transactions. In connection with such a transaction, the third parties may sell securities covered by and pursuant to this prospectus and an applicable prospectus supplement or pricing supplement, as the case may be. If so, the third party may use securities borrowed from us or others to settle such sales and may use securities received from us to close out any related short positions. We may also loan or pledge securities covered by this prospectus and an applicable prospectus supplement to third parties, who may sell the loaned securities or, in an event of default in the case of a pledge, sell the pledged securities pursuant to this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement or pricing supplement, as the case may be.

A prospectus supplement with respect to each series of securities will state the terms of the offering of the securities, including:

- the name or names of any underwriters or agents and the amounts of securities underwritten or purchased by each of them, if any;
- the public offering price or purchase price of the securities and the net proceeds to be received by us from the sale;
- any delayed delivery arrangements;
- any underwriting discounts or agency fees and other items constituting underwriters' or agents' compensation;
- any discounts or concessions allowed or reallocated or paid to dealers; and
- any securities exchange on which the securities may be listed.

The offer and sale of the securities described in this prospectus by us, the underwriters, or the third parties described above may be effected from time to time in one or more transactions, including privately negotiated transactions, either:

- at a fixed price or prices, which may be changed;
- at market prices prevailing at the time of sale;
- at prices related to the prevailing market prices; or
- at negotiated prices; or
- through a rights offering or similar arrangement.

## **General**

Any public offering price and any discounts, commissions, concessions or other items constituting compensation allowed or reallocated or paid to underwriters, dealers, agents or remarketing firms may be changed from time to time. Underwriters, dealers, agents and remarketing firms that participate in the distribution of the offered securities may be “underwriters” as defined in the Securities Act. Any discounts or commissions they receive from us and any profits they receive on the resale of the offered securities may be treated as underwriting discounts and commissions under the Securities Act. We will identify any underwriters, agents or dealers and describe their commissions, fees or discounts in the applicable prospectus supplement or pricing supplement, as the case may be.

## **At-the-Market Offerings**

If we reach an agreement with an underwriter on a placement, including the number of shares of stock to be offered in the placement and any minimum price below which sales may not be made, such underwriter would agree to use its commercially reasonable efforts, consistent with its normal trading and sales practices, to try to sell such shares on such terms. Underwriters could make sales in privately negotiated transactions and/or any other method permitted by law, including sales deemed to be an “at-the-market” offering as defined in Rule 415 promulgated under the Securities Act, sales made directly on the Nasdaq, the existing trading market for our stock, or sales made to or through a market maker other than on an exchange. The name of any such underwriter or agent involved in the offer and sale of our stock, the amounts underwritten, and the nature of its obligations to take our stock will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

## **Underwriters and Agents**

If underwriters are used in a sale, they will acquire the offered securities for their own account. The underwriters may resell the offered securities in one or more transactions, including negotiated transactions. These sales may be made at a fixed public offering price or prices, which may be changed, at market prices prevailing at the time of the sale, at prices related to such prevailing market price or at negotiated prices. We may offer the securities to the public through an underwriting syndicate or through a single underwriter. The underwriters in any particular offering will be identified in the applicable prospectus supplement or pricing supplement, as the case may be.

Unless otherwise specified in connection with any particular offering of securities, the obligations of the underwriters to purchase the offered securities will be subject to certain conditions contained in an underwriting agreement that we will enter into with the underwriters at the time of the sale to them. The underwriters will be obligated to purchase all of the securities of the series offered if any of the securities are purchased, unless otherwise specified in connection with any particular offering of securities. Any initial offering price and any discounts or concessions allowed, reallocated or paid to dealers may be changed from time to time.

We may designate agents to sell the offered securities. Unless otherwise specified in connection with any particular offering of securities, the agents will agree to use their best efforts to solicit purchases for the period of their appointment. We may also sell the offered securities to one or more remarketing firms, acting as principals for their own accounts or as agents for us. These firms will remarket the offered securities upon purchasing them in accordance with a redemption or repayment pursuant to the terms of the offered securities. A prospectus supplement or pricing supplement, as the case may be, will identify any remarketing firm and will describe the terms of its agreement, if any, with us and its compensation.

In connection with offerings made through underwriters or agents, we may enter into agreements with such underwriters or agents pursuant to which we receive our outstanding securities in consideration for the securities being offered to the public for cash. In connection with these arrangements, the underwriters or agents may also sell securities covered by this prospectus to hedge their positions in these outstanding securities, including in short sale transactions. If so, the underwriters or agents may use the securities received from us under these arrangements to close out any related open borrowings of securities.

#### **Dealers**

We may sell the offered securities to dealers as principals. We may negotiate and pay dealers' commissions, discounts or concessions for their services. The dealer may then resell such securities to the public either at varying prices to be determined by the dealer or at a fixed offering price agreed to with us at the time of resale. Dealers engaged by us may allow other dealers to participate in resales.

#### **Direct Sales**

We may choose to sell the offered securities directly. In this case, no underwriters or agents would be involved.

#### **Institutional Purchasers**

We may authorize agents, dealers or underwriters to solicit certain institutional investors to purchase offered securities on a delayed delivery basis pursuant to delayed delivery contracts providing for payment and delivery on a specified future date. The applicable prospectus supplement or pricing supplement, as the case may be will provide the details of any such arrangement, including the offering price and commissions payable on the solicitations.

We will enter into such delayed contracts only with institutional purchasers that we approve. These institutions may include commercial and savings banks, insurance companies, pension funds, investment companies and educational and charitable institutions.

#### **Indemnification; Other Relationships**

We may have agreements with agents, underwriters, dealers and remarketing firms to indemnify them against certain civil liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act. Agents, underwriters, dealers and remarketing firms, and their affiliates, may engage in transactions with, or perform services for, us in the ordinary course of business. This includes commercial banking and investment banking transactions.

#### **Market Making, Stabilization and Other Transactions**

There is currently no market for any of the offered securities other than the shares of common stock, which are listed on Nasdaq. If certain of the offered securities are traded after their initial issuance, they may trade at a discount from their initial offering price, depending upon prevailing interest rates, the market for similar securities and other factors. While it is possible that an underwriter could inform us that it intended to make a market in the offered securities, such underwriter would not be obligated to do so, and any such market making could be discontinued at any time without notice. Therefore, no assurance can be given as to whether an active trading market will develop for certain of the offered securities. We have no current plans for listing of the offered securities (other than the common stock) on any securities exchange; any such listing with respect to any particular securities will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement or pricing supplement, as the case may be.

In connection with any offering of common stock or preferred stock, the underwriters may purchase and sell common stock or preferred stock in the open market. These transactions may include short sales, syndicate covering transactions and stabilizing transactions. Short sales involve syndicate sales of common stock or preferred stock in excess of the number of shares to be purchased by the underwriters in the offering, which creates a syndicate short position. "Covered" short sales are sales of shares made in an amount up to the number of shares represented by the underwriters' over-allotment option. In determining the source of shares to close out the covered syndicate short position, the underwriters will consider, among other things, the price of shares available for purchase in the open market as compared to the price at which they may purchase shares through the over-allotment option. Transactions to close out the covered syndicate short involve either purchases of the common stock or preferred stock in the open market after the distribution has been completed or the exercise of the over-allotment option. The underwriters may also make "naked" short sales of shares in excess of the over-allotment option. The underwriters must close out any naked short position by purchasing common stock or preferred stock in the open market. A naked short position is more likely to be created if the underwriters are concerned that there may be downward pressure on the price of the shares in the open market after pricing that could adversely affect investors who purchase in the offering. Stabilizing transactions consist of bids for or purchases of shares in the open market while the offering is in progress for the purpose of pegging, fixing or maintaining the price of the securities.

In connection with any offering, the underwriters may also engage in penalty bids. Penalty bids permit the underwriters to reclaim a selling concession from a syndicate member when the securities originally sold by the syndicate member are purchased in a syndicate covering transaction to cover syndicate short positions. Stabilizing transactions, syndicate covering transactions and penalty bids may cause the price of the securities to be higher than it would be in the absence of the transactions. The underwriters may, if they commence these transactions, discontinue them at any time.

## LEGAL MATTERS

Certain legal matters, including the validity of the offered securities, will be passed upon for us by Westward Law Group, Las Vegas, Nevada or such other counsel identified in any applicable prospectus supplement.

## EXPERTS

The consolidated financial statements incorporated in this prospectus by reference from Xenetic Biosciences, Inc.'s and subsidiaries' Annual Report on Form 10-K have been audited by Marcum LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, as stated in their report, which are incorporated herein by reference. Such consolidated financial statements have been so incorporated in reliance upon the report of such firm given upon their authority as experts in accounting and auditing.

## WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

We have filed a registration statement, of which this prospectus is a part, covering the securities offered hereby. As allowed by SEC rules, this prospectus does not contain all of the information set forth in the registration statement and the exhibits thereto. We refer you to the registration statement and the exhibits thereto for further information. This prospectus is qualified in its entirety by such other information.

Copies of the registration statement, including the exhibits and schedules to the registration statement, may be examined without charge at the public reference room of the SEC, 100 F Street, N.E., Room 1580, Washington, DC 20549. Information about the operation of the public reference room may be obtained by calling the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330. Copies of all or a portion of the registration statement can be obtained from the public reference room of the SEC upon payment of prescribed fees. Our SEC filings, including our registration statement, are also available to you on the SEC's website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov).

We file reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC as required by the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"). Those reports, proxy statements and other information are available for inspection and copying at the Public Reference Room and on the SEC's website referred to above.

We maintain a website on the Internet with the address of [www.xeneticbio.com](http://www.xeneticbio.com). We are not incorporating by reference into this prospectus the information on our website, and you should not consider our website to be a part of this prospectus.

## INCORPORATION OF CERTAIN DOCUMENTS BY REFERENCE

The SEC's rules allow us to "incorporate by reference" information into this prospectus, which means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to another document filed separately with the SEC. The information incorporated by reference is deemed to be part of this prospectus from the date of filing those documents. Any reports filed by us with the SEC on or after the date of this prospectus will automatically update and, where applicable, supersede any information contained in this prospectus or incorporated by reference in this prospectus. We have filed the documents listed below with the SEC under the Exchange Act, and these documents are incorporated herein by reference (other than information in such documents that is furnished and not deemed to be filed):

- Our Annual Report on [Form 10-K](#) for the year ended December 31, 2017, filed on March 30, 2018, as amended by that [Form 10-K/A](#), filed on April 30, 2018;
- Our Quarterly Report on [Form 10-Q](#) for the quarter ended March 31, 2018, filed on May 15, 2018;
- Our Quarterly Report on [Form 10-Q](#) for the quarter ended June 30, 2018, filed on August 10, 2018;
- The description of our common stock included in our Registration Statement on [Form 8-A12B](#), filed on November 1, 2016;
- The description of our Series A Preferred Stock included in our Registration Statement on [Form S-1/A](#), filed on October 27, 2016; and
- The description of our Series B Preferred Stock included in our Registration Statement on [Form S-1/A](#), filed on October 31, 2016.

All documents we file pursuant to Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act on or after the date of this prospectus and prior to the termination of the offering of the securities to which this prospectus relates (other than information in such documents that is furnished and not deemed to be filed) shall be deemed to be incorporated by reference into this prospectus and to be a part hereof from the date of filing of those documents. All documents we file pursuant to Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act after the date of the initial registration statement that contains this prospectus and prior to the effectiveness of the registration statement shall be deemed to be incorporated by reference into this prospectus and to be a part hereof from the date of filing those documents.

We will provide to each person, including any beneficial owner, to whom a copy of this prospectus is delivered, a copy of any or all of the information that has been incorporated by reference in this prospectus but not delivered with this prospectus (other than the exhibits to such documents which are not specifically incorporated by reference therein); we will provide this information at no cost to the requester upon written or oral request to: Chief Financial Officer, Xenetic Biosciences, Inc., 99 Hayden Avenue, Suite 230, Lexington, Massachusetts, 02421, or (781) 778-7720.

**PART II**  
**INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS**

**Item 14. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution.**

The following table shows the fees and expenses to be paid by Xenetic Biosciences, Inc. ("Xenetic") in connection with the sale and distribution of the securities being registered hereby. All amounts are estimated.

Securities and Exchange Commission registration fee	\$ 6,225.00
Legal fees and expenses (including Blue Sky fees)	*
Accounting fees and expenses	*
Transfer agent fees and expenses	*
Miscellaneous	*
Total	<u>\$ 6,225.00</u>

\* To be filed by amendment, Form 8-K or Rule 424 rules.

**Item 15. Indemnification of Directors and Officers.**

Nevada law provides that a Nevada corporation may indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed proceeding, except an action by or in the right of the corporation, by reason of the fact that such person is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation or other enterprise, against expenses, including attorneys' fees, judgments, fines and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred by such person in connection with the proceeding, if such person:

- is not liable for breach of his or her fiduciary duties to the corporation; or
- acted in good faith and in a manner which he or she reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe his or her conduct was unlawful.

In addition, a Nevada corporation may indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action by or in the right of the corporation to procure a judgment in its favor by reason of the fact that such person is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation or other enterprise against expenses, including amounts paid in settlement and attorneys' fees actually and reasonably incurred by such person in connection with the defense or settlement of the action, if he or she:

- is not liable for breach of his or her fiduciary duties to the corporation; or
- acted in good faith and in a manner which he or she reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation.

Under Nevada law, indemnification may not be made for any claim as to which such a person has been adjudged by a court of competent jurisdiction, after exhaustion of all appeals therefrom, to be liable to the corporation or for amounts paid in settlement to the corporation, unless and only to the extent that a court of competent jurisdiction determines that in view of all the circumstances of the case, the person is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnity for such expenses as the court deems proper.

To the extent that a director, officer, employee or agent of a corporation has been successful on the merits or otherwise in defense of any non-derivative proceeding or any derivative proceeding, or in defense of any claim, issue or matter therein, the corporation shall indemnify such person against expenses, including attorneys' fees, actually and reasonably incurred in connection with the defense.

Further, Nevada law permits a Nevada corporation to purchase and maintain insurance or to make other financial arrangements on behalf of any person who is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation or other enterprise for any liability asserted against him or her and liability and expenses incurred by him or her in his or her capacity as a director, officer, employee or agent, or arising out of his or her status as such, whether or not the corporation has the authority to indemnify such person against such liability and expenses.

Under our charter and bylaws, we are obligated to indemnify any director, officer, employee or agent of the company to the fullest extent permitted by the NRS, as described above. We have entered into separate indemnification agreements with our directors and executive officers, in addition to the indemnification provided for in our charter and bylaws. These agreements, among other things, require us to indemnify our directors and executive officers who have met the standards of conduct that make it permissible under the NRS for us to indemnify the claimant for certain expenses, including attorneys' fees, judgments, fines and settlement amounts incurred by such person in any action or proceeding arising out of their services as one of our directors, officers, employees or agents, or any of our subsidiaries or any other company or enterprise to which the person provides services at our request. We believe that these charter and bylaw provisions and indemnification agreements are necessary to attract and retain qualified persons as directors.

In addition, indemnification is required to continue as to a person who has ceased to be a director or officer and inures to the benefit of his or her heirs, executors and administrators. Subject to the exceptions detailed below, we may indemnify a person seeking indemnification in connection with a proceeding (or part thereof) initiated by the person seeking indemnification only if the proceeding (or part thereof) was authorized by our board of directors. We may indemnify any employee or agent of us to an extent greater than required by law only if and to the extent that our directors, in their discretion, may determine.

If we do not pay a claim for indemnification within 60 days after a written claim has been received by us or pay an advancement of expenses under our bylaws in full within 20 days after a written claim has been received by us, the claimant may bring suit against us to recover the unpaid amount of the claim and, if successful in whole or in part, the claimant also will be entitled to be paid the expense of prosecuting such claim to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law. In any such action, we would have the burden of proving that the claimant is not entitled to the requested indemnification or advancement of expenses.

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to our directors, officers and controlling persons pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, we have been advised that in the opinion of the SEC this indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is therefore unenforceable.

Item 16. Exhibits.

EXHIBIT INDEX

Exhibit No.	Exhibit Index	Form	Filing Date	Exhibit Number	Reference
4.1	Form of Underwriting Agreement				(2)
3.1	<a href="#">Articles of Incorporation</a>	S-1	11/21/2011	3.1	
3.2	<a href="#">Certificate of Amendment to Articles of Incorporation</a>	8-K	02/12/2013	3.1	
3.3	<a href="#">Certificate of Amendment to Articles of Incorporation</a>	8-K	02/27/2013	3.1	
3.4	<a href="#">Certificate of Amendment to Articles of Incorporation</a>	10-Q	01/10/2014	3.1	
3.5	<a href="#">Certificate of Change Pursuant to NRS 78.209</a>	10-Q	01/10/2014	3.2	
3.6	<a href="#">Certificate of Amendment to Articles of Incorporation</a>	8-K	09/30/2015	3.1	
3.7	<a href="#">Amended and Restated Bylaws</a>	8-K	02/27/2017	3.1	
3.8	<a href="#">Form of Amended and Restated Certificate of Designation of Preferences, Rights and Limitations of Series A Preferred Stock</a>	S-1/A	10/27/2016	3.8	
3.9	<a href="#">Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Designation of Preferences, Rights and Limitations of Series B Preferred Stock</a>	S-1/A	10/31/2016	3.9	
4.1	Form of Warrant Agreement				(2)
4.2	Form of Warrant				(2)
4.3	<a href="#">Form of Common Stock Certificate of the Registrant</a>	S-1/A	07/14/2016	4.1	
4.4	<a href="#">Form of Senior Indenture</a>				(1)
4.5	<a href="#">Form of Subordinated Indenture</a>				(1)
4.6	Form of Senior Debt Security				(2)
4.7	Form of Subordinated Debt Security				(2)
4.8	Form of Depositary Agreement				(2)
4.9	Form of Depositary Receipt				(2)
4.10	Form of Unit Agreement				(2)
4.11	Form of Unit Certificate				(2)
4.12	Form of Rights Agreement				(2)
4.13	Form of Rights Certificate				(2)
5.1	<a href="#">Opinion of Westward Law, LLC</a>				(1)
23.1	<a href="#">Consent of Marcum LLP</a>				(1)
23.2	<a href="#">Consent of Westward Law, LLC</a> (included in Exhibit 5.1)				(1)
24.1	<a href="#">Power of Attorney</a> (contained on signature page)				(1)
25.1	Form T-1 Statement of Eligibility and Qualification under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 under the Senior Indenture and the Subordinated Indenture				(3)

(1) Filed herewith.

(2) To be filed by amendment or as an exhibit to a document to be incorporated by reference herein.

(3) To be filed separately pursuant to Section 305(b)(2) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, if applicable.

## Item 17. Undertakings.

(a) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes:

- (1) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:
  - (i) To include any prospectus required by section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act;
  - (ii) To reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than 20 percent change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement; and
  - (iii) To include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the registration statement or any material change to such information in the registration statement; *provided, however*, that paragraphs (a)(1)(i), (a)(1)(ii) and (a)(1)(iii) of this section do not apply if the information required to be included in a post-effective amendment by those paragraphs is contained in reports filed with or furnished to the Commission by the registrant pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 that are incorporated by reference in the registration statement, or is contained in a form of prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) that is part of the registration statement.
- (2) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.
- (3) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering.
- (4) That, for purposes of determining liability under the Securities Act to any purchaser:
  - (i) Each prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(3) shall be deemed to be part of the registration statement as of the date the filed prospectus was deemed part of and included in the registration statement; and
  - (ii) Each prospectus required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424(b)(2), (b)(5), or (b)(7) as part of a registration statement in reliance on Rule 430B relating to an offering made pursuant to Rule 415(a)(1)(i), (vii), or (x) for the purpose of providing the information required by Section 10(a) of the Securities Act shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the earlier of the date such form of prospectus is first used after effectiveness or the date of the first contract of sale of securities in the offering described in the prospectus. As provided in Rule 430B, for liability purposes of the issuer and any person that is at that date an underwriter, such date shall be deemed to be a new effective date of the registration statement relating to the securities in the registration statement to which that prospectus relates, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof. *Provided, however*, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such effective date, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such effective date.

- (5) That, for the purpose of determining liability of the registrant under the Securities Act to any purchaser in the initial distribution of the securities, the undersigned registrant undertakes that in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:
- (i) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;
  - (ii) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant or used or referred to by the undersigned registrant;
  - (iii) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant; and
  - (iv) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned registrant to the purchaser.
- (b) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes that, for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act, each filing of the registrant's annual report pursuant to Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (and, where applicable, each filing of an employee benefit plan's annual report pursuant to Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934) that is incorporated by reference in the registration statement shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.
- (c) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes to file an application for the purpose of determining the eligibility of the trustee to act under subsection (a) of Section 310 of the Trust Indenture Act in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission under Section 305(b)(2) of the Act.
- (d) The undersigned registrant hereby further undertakes that:
- (1) For purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act, the information omitted from the form of prospectus filed as part of this registration statement in reliance upon Rule 430A and contained in a form of prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(1) or (4) or 497(h) under the Securities Act shall be deemed to be part of this registration statement as of the time it was declared effective.
  - (2) For the purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act, each post-effective amendment that contains a form of prospectus shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.
- (e) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to directors, officers or controlling persons of the registrant pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

## SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form S-3 and has duly caused this Registration Statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the City of Lexington, Commonwealth of Massachusetts, as of this 27th day of September, 2018.

### XENETIC BIOSCIENCES, INC.

By: /s/ Jeffrey F. Eisenberg

Name: Jeffrey F. Eisenberg

Title: Chief Executive Officer

## POWER OF ATTORNEY

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, that each person whose signature appears below constitutes and appoints Jeffrey F. Eisenberg and James F. Parslow acting singly, his true and lawful attorney-in-fact and agent, with full power of substitution and resubstitution for him and in his name, place and stead, in any and all capacities to sign any and all amendments including post-effective amendments to this registration statement, and any additional related registration statement filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (including post-effective amendments to this registration statement and any such related registration statements), and to file the same, with all exhibits thereto, and any other documents in connection therewith, granting unto said attorney-in-fact and agent full power and authority to do and perform each and every act and thing requisite and necessary to be done in and about the premises, as fully to all intents and purposes as he might or could do in person, hereby ratifying and confirming all that said attorney-in-fact and agent, or his substitute, may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue thereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities indicated below on the 27th day of September, 2018.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title(s)</u>
<u>/s/ JEFFREY F. EISENBERG</u> Jeffrey F. Eisenberg	Chief Executive Officer and Director (Principal Executive Officer)
<u>/s/ JAMES PARSLow</u> James Parslow	Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer)
<u>/s/ JAMES CALLAWAY</u> James Callaway	Director
<u>/s/ FIRDAUS JAL DASTOOR FCS</u> Firdaus Jal Dastoor FCS	Director
<u>/s/ DMITRY GENKIN</u> Dmitry Genkin	Director
<u>/s/ ROMAN KNYAZEY</u> Roman Knyazev	Director
<u>/s/ ROGER KORNBERG</u> Roger Kornberg	Director
<u>/s/ ADAM LOGAL</u> Adam Logal	Director

Xenetic Biosciences, Inc.

and

\_\_\_\_\_,

Trustee

INDENTURE

Dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_

Providing for Issuance of Senior Debt Securities in Series

---

## Table of Contents

<b>ARTICLE I DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Section 1.01 Definitions</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Section 1.02 Compliance Certificates and Opinions</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>Section 1.03 Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>Section 1.04 Acts of Securityholders</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>Section 1.05 Notices, etc., to Trustee and Company</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>Section 1.06 Notices to Securityholders; Waiver</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>Section 1.07 Conflict with Trust Indenture Act</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>Section 1.08 Effect of Headings and Table of Contents</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>Section 1.09 Successors and Assigns</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>Section 1.10 Separability Clause</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>Section 1.11 Benefits of Indenture</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>Section 1.12 Governing Law</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Section 1.13 Counterparts</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Section 1.14 Judgment Currency</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Section 1.15 Legal Holidays</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Section 1.16 Agent for Service; Submission to Jurisdiction; Waiver of Immunities and Jury Trial</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>ARTICLE II SECURITY FORMS</b>	<b>13</b>

<b>Section 2.01</b>	<b>Forms Generally</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>Section 2.02</b>	<b>Forms of Securities</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>Section 2.03</b>	<b>Form of Trustee’s Certificate of Authentication</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>Section 2.04</b>	<b>Securities Issuable in the Form of a Global Security</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>ARTICLE III</b>	<b>THE SECURITIES</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>Section 3.01</b>	<b>General Title; General Limitations; Issuable in Series; Terms of Particular Series</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>Section 3.02</b>	<b>Denominations</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>Section 3.03</b>	<b>Execution, Authentication and Delivery and Dating</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>Section 3.04</b>	<b>Temporary Securities</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>Section 3.05</b>	<b>Registration, Transfer and Exchange</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>Section 3.06</b>	<b>Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>Section 3.07</b>	<b>Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>Section 3.08</b>	<b>Persons Deemed Owners</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>Section 3.09</b>	<b>Cancellation</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>Section 3.10</b>	<b>CUSIP and CINS Numbers</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>Section 3.11</b>	<b>Computation of Interest</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>Section 3.12</b>	<b>Delayed Issuance of Securities</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>ARTICLE IV</b>	<b>SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE; DEFEASANCE</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>Section 4.01</b>	<b>Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>Section 4.02</b>	<b>Application of Trust Money</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>Section 4.03</b>	<b>Defeasance Upon Deposit of Funds or Government Obligations</b>	<b>25</b>

<b>Section 4.04</b>	<b>Reinstatement</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>ARTICLE V</b>	<b>REMEDIES</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Section 5.01</b>	<b>Events of Default</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Section 5.02</b>	<b>Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>Section 5.03</b>	<b>Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>Section 5.04</b>	<b>Trustee May File Proofs of Claim</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>Section 5.05</b>	<b>Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>Section 5.06</b>	<b>Application of Money Collected</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>Section 5.07</b>	<b>Limitation on Suits</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>Section 5.08</b>	<b>Unconditional Right of Securityholders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>Section 5.09</b>	<b>Restoration of Rights and Remedies</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Section 5.10</b>	<b>Rights and Remedies Cumulative</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Section 5.11</b>	<b>Delay or Omission Not Waiver</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Section 5.12</b>	<b>Control by Securityholders</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Section 5.13</b>	<b>Waiver of Past Defaults</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Section 5.14</b>	<b>Undertaking for Costs</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Section 5.15</b>	<b>Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>ARTICLE VI</b>	<b>THE TRUSTEE</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Section 6.01</b>	<b>Certain Duties and Responsibilities</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Section 6.02</b>	<b>Notice of Defaults</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>Section 6.03</b>	<b>Certain Rights of Trustee</b>	<b>34</b>

<b>Section 6.04</b>	<b>Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>Section 6.05</b>	<b>May Hold Securities</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>Section 6.06</b>	<b>Money Held in Trust</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>Section 6.07</b>	<b>Compensation and Reimbursement</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>Section 6.08</b>	<b>Disqualification; Conflicting Interests</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>Section 6.09</b>	<b>Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>Section 6.10</b>	<b>Resignation and Removal</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>Section 6.11</b>	<b>Acceptance of Appointment by Successor</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>Section 6.12</b>	<b>Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>Section 6.13</b>	<b>Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>Section 6.14</b>	<b>Appointment of Authenticating Agent</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>ARTICLE VII</b>	<b>SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY</b>	<b>41</b>
<b>Section 7.01</b>	<b>Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Securityholders</b>	<b>41</b>
<b>Section 7.02</b>	<b>Preservation of Information; Communications to Securityholders</b>	<b>41</b>
<b>Section 7.03</b>	<b>Reports by Trustee</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>Section 7.04</b>	<b>Reports by Company</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>ARTICLE VIII</b>	<b>CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE OR TRANSFER</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>Section 8.01</b>	<b>Consolidation, Merger, Conveyance or Transfer on Certain Terms</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>Section 8.02</b>	<b>Successor Person Substituted</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>ARTICLE IX</b>	<b>SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES</b>	<b>44</b>
<b>Section 9.01</b>	<b>Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Securityholders</b>	<b>44</b>

<b>Section 9.02</b>	<b>Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Securityholders</b>	<b>45</b>
<b>Section 9.03</b>	<b>Execution of Supplemental Indentures</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>Section 9.04</b>	<b>Effect of Supplemental Indentures</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>Section 9.05</b>	<b>Conformity with Trust Indenture Act</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>Section 9.06</b>	<b>Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>Section 9.07</b>	<b>Notice of Supplemental Indentures</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>Section 9.08</b>	<b>Revocation and Effect of Consents, Waivers and Actions</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>ARTICLE X</b>	<b>COVENANTS</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>Section 10.01</b>	<b>Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>Section 10.02</b>	<b>Maintenance of Office or Agency</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>Section 10.03</b>	<b>Money for Security Payments to Be Held in Trust</b>	<b>48</b>
<b>Section 10.04</b>	<b>Statement as to Compliance</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>Section 10.05</b>	<b>Legal Existence</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>Section 10.06</b>	<b>Waiver of Certain Covenants</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>ARTICLE XI</b>	<b>REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>Section 11.01</b>	<b>Applicability of Article</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>Section 11.02</b>	<b>Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>Section 11.03</b>	<b>Selection by Trustee of Securities to Be Redeemed</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>Section 11.04</b>	<b>Notice of Redemption</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>Section 11.05</b>	<b>Deposit of Redemption Price</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>Section 11.06</b>	<b>Securities Payable on Redemption Date</b>	<b>52</b>

<b>Section 11.07</b>	<b>Securities Redeemed in Part</b>	<b>52</b>
<b>Section 11.08</b>	<b>Provisions with Respect to Any Sinking Funds</b>	<b>52</b>
<b>Section 11.09</b>	<b>Rescission of Redemption</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>ARTICLE XII</b>	<b>GUARANTEES</b>	<b>54</b>
<b>Section 12.01</b>	<b>Guarantees</b>	<b>54</b>

## INDENTURE

THIS INDENTURE between Xenetic Biosciences, Inc., a Nevada corporation (hereinafter called the “Company”) having its principal office at 99 Hayden Ave, Suite 230, Lexington, Massachusetts 02421, and, as trustee (hereinafter called the “Trustee”), is made and entered into as of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_.

### RECITALS OF THE COMPANY

The Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance of its debentures, notes, bonds or other evidences of indebtedness, in an unlimited aggregate principal amount, to be issued in one or more fully registered series.

This Indenture is subject to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act that are deemed to be incorporated into this Indenture and shall, to the extent applicable, be governed by such provisions.

All things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company in accordance with its terms have been done.

### AGREEMENTS OF THE PARTIES

To set forth or to provide for the establishment of the terms and conditions upon which the Securities are and are to be authenticated, issued and delivered, and in consideration of the premises and the purchase of Securities by the Holders thereof, it is mutually agreed as follows, for the equal and proportionate benefit of all Holders of the Securities or of a series thereof, as the case may be:

#### ARTICLE I DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION

Section 1.01 Definitions. For all purposes of this Indenture and of any indenture supplemental hereto, except as otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires:

- (1) the terms defined in this Article have the meanings assigned to them in this Article, and include the plural as well as the singular;
- (2) all other terms used herein which are defined in the Trust Indenture Act or by Commission rule under the Trust Indenture Act, either directly or by reference therein, have the meanings assigned to them herein;
- (3) all accounting terms not otherwise defined herein have the meanings assigned to them in accordance with GAAP and, except as otherwise herein expressly provided, the term “generally accepted accounting principles” with respect to any computation required or permitted hereunder shall mean such accounting principles and any accounting rules or interpretations promulgated by the Commission as are generally accepted in the United States of America at the date of this Indenture; and

(4) all references in this instrument to designated “Articles”, “Sections” and other subdivisions are to the designated Articles, Sections and other subdivisions of this instrument as originally executed. The words “herein”, “hereof” and “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

Certain terms, used principally in Article VI, are defined in that Article.

“Act”, when used with respect to any Securityholder, has the meaning specified in Section 1.04.

“Affiliate” of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For the purposes of this definition, “control” when used with respect to any specified Person means the power to direct the management and policies of such Person, directly or indirectly, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise; and the terms “controlling” and “controlled” have meanings correlative to the foregoing.

“Authenticating Agent” means any Person authorized by the Company to authenticate Securities under Section 6.14.

“Board of Directors” means (i) the board of directors of the Company, (ii) any duly authorized committee of such board, (iii) any committee of officers of the Company or (iv) any officer of the Company acting, in the case of clauses (iii) or (iv), pursuant to authority granted by the board of directors of the Company or any committee of such board.

“Board Resolution” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or any Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Business Day” means, with respect to any series of Securities, unless otherwise specified in a Board Resolution, in an indenture supplemental hereto or an Officer’s Certificate with respect to a particular series of Securities, each day which is not a Saturday, Sunday or other day on which banking institutions in the pertinent Place or Places of Payment or the city in which the Corporate Trust Office is located are authorized or required by law or executive order to be closed.

“Closing Price” of the Common Stock or other Marketable Security, as the case may be, shall mean the last reported sale price of such stock or other Marketable Security (regular way) as shown on the Composite Tape of the Nasdaq (or, if such stock or other Marketable Security is not listed or admitted to trading on the Nasdaq, on the principal national securities exchange on which such stock or other Marketable Security is listed or admitted to trading, including the NYSE), or, in case no such sale takes place on such day, the average of the closing bid and asked prices on the Nasdaq (or, if such stock or other Marketable Security is not listed or admitted to trading on the Nasdaq, on the principal national securities exchange on which such stock or other Marketable Security is listed or admitted to trading, including the NYSE), or if such stock or other Marketable Security is not so reported, the average of the closing bid and asked prices as furnished by any member of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, selected from time to time by the Company for that purpose.

“Commission” means the Securities and Exchange Commission, as from time to time constituted, created under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or, if at any time after the execution of this instrument such Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties at such time.

“Common Stock” shall mean the Common Stock, par value \$0.001 per share, of the Company authorized at the date of this Indenture as originally signed, or any other class of stock resulting from successive changes or reclassifications of such Common Stock, and in any such case including any shares thereof authorized after the date of this Indenture.

“Company” means the Person named as the “Company” in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Company” shall mean such successor.

“Company Request”, “Company Order” and “Company Consent” mean a written request, order or consent, respectively, signed in the name of the Company by its Chairman of the Board, President, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer, Controller, General Counsel, Secretary or any Vice President, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Conversion Price” means, with respect to any series of Securities which are convertible into Common Stock or other Marketable Securities, the price per share of Common Stock or the price per designated unit of other Marketable Security at which the Securities of such series are so convertible as set forth in the Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto with respect to such series (or in any indenture supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to Section 9.01(9) with respect to such series), as the same may be adjusted from time to time in accordance with an indenture supplemental hereto.

“Corporate Trust Office” means the office of the Trustee at which at any particular time its corporate trust business shall be principally administered, which office at the date hereof is located at

\_\_\_\_\_

Attn: \_\_\_\_\_

“Current Market Price” on any date shall mean the average of the daily Closing Prices per share of Common Stock or of such other Marketable Securities for any 30 consecutive Trading Days selected by the Company prior to the day in question, which 30 consecutive Trading Day period shall not commence more than 45 Trading Days prior to the day in question.

“Defaulted Interest” has the meaning specified in Section 3.07.

“Depository” means, unless otherwise specified by the Company pursuant to either Section 2.04 or 3.01, with respect to Securities of any series issuable or issued as a Global Security, The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York, or any successor thereto registered as a clearing agency under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or other applicable statute or regulation.

“Discharged” has the meaning specified in Section 4.03.

“Event of Default” has the meaning specified in Article V.

“Federal Bankruptcy Act” has the meaning specified in Section 5.01(5).

“GAAP” means generally accepted accounting principles as such principles are in effect in the United States as of the date of this Indenture.

“Global Security”, when used with respect to any series of Securities issued hereunder, means a Security which is executed by the Company and authenticated and delivered by the Trustee to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository’s instruction, all in accordance with this Indenture and an indenture supplemental hereto, if any, or Board Resolution and pursuant to a Company Request, which shall be registered in the name of the Depository or its nominee and which shall represent, and shall be denominated in an amount equal to the aggregate principal amount of, all of the Outstanding Securities of such series or any portion thereof, in either case having the same terms, including, without limitation, the same original issue date, date or dates on which principal is due, and interest rate or method of determining interest.

“Guarantee” means the guarantees specified in Section 12.01(a).

“Guarantor” means any Person who guarantees any series of Securities issued hereunder as specified in Section 12.01(a).

“Holder”, when used with respect to any Security, means a Securityholder, which means a Person in whose name a security is registered in the Security Register.

“Indenture” or “this Indenture” means this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof and shall include the terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated by Section 3.01.

“Interest”, with respect to the Securities, means interest on the Securities; provided, that, when used with respect to an Original Issue Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, the term means interest payable after Maturity.

“Interest Payment Date”, when used with respect to any series of Securities, means the Stated Maturity of any installment of interest on those Securities.

“Marketable Security” means any common stock, debt security or other security of a Person which is (or will, upon distribution thereof, be) listed on the NYSE, the NYSE Amex, NASDAQ or any other national securities exchange registered under Section 6 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or approved for quotation in any system of automated dissemination of quotations of securities prices in the United States or for which there is a recognized market maker or trading market.

“Maturity”, when used with respect to any Securities, means the date on which the principal of any such Security becomes due and payable as therein or herein provided, whether on a Repayment Date, at the Stated Maturity or by declaration of acceleration, call for redemption or otherwise.

“NASDAQ” shall mean the NASDAQ Global Select Market, the NASDAQ Global Market or the NASDAQ Capital Market.  
“NYSE” shall mean the New York Stock Exchange, Inc.

“Officers’ Certificate” means a certificate signed by the Chairman of the Board, President, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer, Controller, General Counsel, Secretary or any Vice President, and delivered to the Trustee. Wherever this Indenture requires that an Officers’ Certificate be signed also by a financial expert or an accountant or other expert, such financial expert, accountant or other expert (except as otherwise expressly provided in this Indenture) may be in the employ of the Company, and shall be acceptable to the Trustee.

“Opinion of Counsel” means a written opinion of counsel, who may (except as otherwise expressly provided in this Indenture) be an employee of or of counsel to the Company, which is delivered to the Trustee.

“Original Issue Discount Security” means (i) any Security which provides for an amount less than the principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof, and (ii) any other security which is issued with “original issue discount” within the meaning of Section 1273(a) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the regulations thereunder.

“Outstanding”, when used with respect to the Securities or Securities of any series, means, as of the date of determination, all such Securities theretofore authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, except:

- (i) such Securities theretofore canceled by the Trustee or delivered to the Trustee for cancellation;
- (ii) such Securities for whose payment or redemption money in the necessary amount has been theretofore deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent in trust for the Holders of such Securities; provided that, if such Securities are to be redeemed, notice of such redemption has been duly given pursuant to this Indenture or provision therefor reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee has been made; and
- (iii) such Securities in exchange for or in lieu of which other Securities have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to this Indenture, or which shall have been paid pursuant to the terms of Section 3.06 (except with respect to any such Security as to which proof satisfactory to the Trustee is presented that such Security is held by a Person in whose hands such Security is a legal, valid and binding obligation of the Company).

In determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of such Securities Outstanding have given any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver hereunder, (i) the principal amount of any Original Issue Discount Security that shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the amount of the principal thereof that would be due and payable as of the date of the taking of such action upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof, and (ii) Securities owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding. In determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying upon any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver, only Securities which a Responsible Officer assigned to the Corporate Trust Department of the Trustee knows to be owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or such other obligor shall be so disregarded. Securities so owned which have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding if the pledgee establishes to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee’s right to act as owner with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or such other obligor.

“Paying Agent” means any Person authorized by the Company to pay the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on any Securities on behalf of the Company. The Company initially authorizes the Trustee to act as Paying Agent for the Securities on its behalf. The Company may at any time and from time to time authorize one or more Persons to act as Paying Agent in addition to or in place of the Trustee with respect to any series of Securities issued under this Indenture.

“Person” means any individual, corporation, limited liability company, partnership, joint venture, association, joint stock company, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

“Place of Payment” means with respect to any series of Securities issued hereunder, the city or political subdivision so designated with respect to the series of Securities in question in accordance with the provisions of Section 3.01.

“Predecessor Securities” of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 3.06 in lieu of a lost, destroyed or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the lost, destroyed or stolen Security.

“Redemption Date”, when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the date fixed for such redemption by or pursuant to this Indenture.

“Redemption Price”, when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the price specified in the Security at which it is to be redeemed pursuant to this Indenture.

“Redemption Rescission Event” shall mean the occurrence of (a) any general suspension of trading in, or limitation on prices for, securities on the principal national securities exchange on which shares of Common Stock or Marketable Securities are registered and listed for trading (or, if shares of Common Stock or Marketable Securities are not registered and listed for trading on any such exchange, in the over-the-counter market) for more than six-and-one-half (6-1/2) consecutive trading hours, (b) any decline in either the Dow Jones Industrial Average or the S&P 500 Index (or any successor index published by Dow Jones & Company, Inc. or S&P) by either (i) an amount in excess of 10%, measured from the close of business on any Trading Day to the close of business on the next succeeding Trading Day during the period commencing on the Trading Day preceding the day notice of any redemption of Securities is given (or, if such notice is given after the close of business on a Trading Day, commencing on such Trading Day) and ending at the time and date fixed for redemption in such notice or (ii) an amount in excess of 15% (or if the time and date fixed for redemption is more than 15 days following the date on which such notice of redemption is given, 20%), measured from the close of business on the Trading Day preceding the day notice of such redemption is given (or, if such notice is given after the close of business on a Trading Day, from such Trading Day) to the close of business on any Trading Day at or prior to the time and date fixed for redemption, (c) a declaration of a banking moratorium or any suspension of payments in respect of banks by Federal or state authorities in the United States or (d) the occurrence of an act of terrorism or commencement of a war or armed hostilities or other national or international calamity directly or indirectly involving the United States which in the reasonable judgment of the Company could have a material adverse effect on the market for the Common Stock or Marketable Securities.

“Regular Record Date” for the interest payable on any Security on any Interest Payment Date means the date specified in such Security as the Regular Record Date.

“Repayment Date”, when used with respect to any Security to be repaid, means the date fixed for such repayment pursuant to such Security.

“Repayment Price”, when used with respect to any Security to be repaid, means the price at which it is to be repaid pursuant to such Security.

“Required Currency”, when used with respect to any Security, has the meaning set forth in Section 1.14.

“Responsible Officer”, when used with respect to the Trustee, means any officer of the Trustee with direct responsibility for the administration of this Indenture and also means, with respect to a particular corporate trust matter, any other officer to whom such matter is referred because of his knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject.

“Responsible Officer”, when used with respect to the Company, means any of the Chairman of the Board, President, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer, Controller, General Counsel, Secretary or any Vice President (or any equivalent of the foregoing officers).

“S&P” means Standard & Poor’s Rating Service or any successor to the rating agency business thereto.

“Security” or “Securities” means any note or notes, bond or bonds, debenture or debentures, or any other evidences of indebtedness, as the case may be, of any series authenticated and delivered from time to time under this Indenture.

“Security Register” shall have the meaning specified in Section 3.05.

“Security Registrar” means the Person who keeps the Security Register specified in Section 3.05. The Company initially appoints the Trustee to act as Security Registrar for the Securities on its behalf. The Company may at any time and from time to time authorize any Person to act as Security Registrar in place of the Trustee with respect to any series of Securities issued under this Indenture.

“Securityholder” means a Person in whose name a security is registered in the Security Register.

“Significant Subsidiary” means any Subsidiary which would be a “significant subsidiary” as defined in Article 1, Rule 12 of Regulation S-X, promulgated pursuant to the Securities Act of 1933, as in effect on the date of this Indenture.

“Special Record Date” for the payment of any Defaulted Interest means a date fixed by the Trustee pursuant to Section 3.07.

“Stated Maturity” when used with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon means the date specified in such Security as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable.

“Subsidiary” means, with respect to any Person, any corporation more than 50% of the voting stock of which is owned directly or indirectly by such Person, and any partnership, association, joint venture or other entity in which such Person owns more than 50% of the equity interests or has the power to elect a majority of the board of directors or other governing body.

“Trading Day” shall mean, with respect to the Common Stock or a Marketable Security, so long as the common stock or such Marketable Security, as the case may be, is listed or admitted to trading on the Nasdaq, a day on which the Nasdaq is open for the transaction of business, or, if the Common Stock or such Marketable Security, as the case may be, is not listed or admitted to trading on the Nasdaq, a day on which the principal national securities exchange on which the Common Stock or such Marketable Security, as the case may be, is listed is open for the transaction of business, or, if the Common Stock or such Marketable Security, as the case may be, is not so listed or admitted for trading on any national securities exchange, a day on which the member of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority selected by the Company to provide pricing information for the Common Stock or such Marketable Security is open for the transaction of business.

“Trust Indenture Act” or “TIA” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as in force at the date as of which this instrument was executed; provided, however, that, in the event the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 is amended after such date, “Trust Indenture Act” or “TIA” means, to the extent required by any such amendment, the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as so amended.

“Trustee” means the Person named as the Trustee in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Trustee” shall mean and include each Person who is then a Trustee hereunder. If at any time there is more than one such Person, “Trustee” as used with respect to the Securities of any series shall mean the Trustee with respect to Securities of that series.

“Vice President” when used with respect to the Company or the Trustee means any vice president, whether or not designated by a number or a word or words added before or after the title “vice president”, including without limitation, an assistant vice president.

“Voting Stock”, as applied to the stock of any corporation, means stock of any class or classes (however designated) having by the terms thereof ordinary voting power to elect a majority of the members of the board of directors (or other governing body) of such corporation other than stock having such power only by reason of the happening of a contingency.

“Yield to Maturity” means the yield to maturity on a series of Securities, calculated by the Company at the time of issuance of such series of Securities, or, if applicable, at the most recent redetermination of interest on such series, in accordance with accepted financial practice.

Section 1.02 Compliance Certificates and Opinions. Upon any application or request by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any provision of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee an Officers’ Certificate stating that all conditions precedent, if any (including any covenants compliance with which constitutes a condition precedent), provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel stating that in the opinion of such Counsel all such conditions precedent, if any (including any covenants compliance with which constitutes a condition precedent), have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or request as to which the furnishing of such documents is specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or request, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.

Every certificate or opinion with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant provided for in this Indenture (other than annual statements of compliance provided pursuant to Section 10.04) shall include:

- (1) a statement that each individual signing such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition and the definitions herein relating thereto;
- (2) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based;

(3) a statement that, in the opinion of each such individual, he has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and

(4) a statement as to whether, in the opinion of each such individual, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

Section 1.03 Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee. In any case where several matters are required to be certified by, or covered by an opinion of, any specified Person, it is not necessary that all such matters be certified by, or covered by the opinion of, only one such Person, or that they be so certified or covered by only one document, but one such Person may certify or give an opinion with respect to some matters and one or more other such Persons may certify or give an opinion as to the other matters, and any such Person may certify or give an opinion as to such matters in one or several documents.

Any certificate of an officer of the Company or Opinion of Counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, counsel, unless such officer knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the matters upon which his certificate or opinion is based are erroneous. Any such certificate or Opinion of Counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an officer or officers of the Company stating that the information with respect to such factual matters is in the possession of the Company, unless such counsel knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to such matters are erroneous.

Where any Person is required to make, give or execute two or more applications, requests, consents, certificates, statements, opinions or other instruments under this Indenture, they may, but need not, be consolidated and form one instrument.

Section 1.04 Acts of Securityholders.

(1) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be given or taken by Securityholders or Securityholders of any series may be embodied in and evidenced by one or more instruments of substantially similar tenor signed by such Securityholders in person or by an agent duly appointed in writing or may be embodied in or evidenced by an electronic transmission which identifies the documents containing the proposal on which such consent is requested and certifies such Securityholders' consent thereto and agreement to be bound thereby; and, except as herein otherwise expressly provided, such action shall become effective when such instrument or instruments are delivered to the Trustee, and, where it is hereby expressly required, to the Company. If any Securities are denominated in coin or currency other than that of the United States, then for the purposes of determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of Securities have taken any action as herein described, the principal amount of such Securities shall be deemed to be that amount of United States dollars that could be obtained for such principal amount on the basis of the spot rate of exchange into United States dollars for the currency in which such Securities are denominated (as evidenced to the Trustee by an Officers' Certificate) as of the date the taking of such action by the Holders of such requisite principal amount is evidenced to the Trustee as provided in the immediately preceding sentence. If any Securities are Original Issue Discount Securities, then for the purposes of determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of Securities have taken any action as herein described, the principal amount of such Original Issue Discount Securities shall be deemed to be the amount of the principal thereof that would be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof as of the date the taking of such action by the Holders of such requisite principal amount is evidenced to the Trustee as provided in the first sentence of this Section 1.04(a). Such instrument or instruments (and the action embodied therein and evidenced thereby) are herein sometimes referred to as the "Act" of the Securityholders signing such instrument or instruments. Proof of execution of any such instrument or of a writing appointing any such agent shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and (subject to Section 6.01) conclusive in favor of the Trustee and the Company, if made in the manner provided in this Section.

(2) The fact and date of the execution by any Person of any such instrument or writing may be proved by the affidavit of a witness to such execution or by the certificate of any notary public or other officer authorized by law to take acknowledgments of deeds, certifying that the individual signing such instrument or writing acknowledged to him the execution thereof. Where such execution is by an officer of a corporation or a member of a partnership, on behalf of such corporation or partnership, such certificate or affidavit shall also constitute sufficient proof of his authority. The fact and date of the execution of any such instrument or writing, or the authority of the person executing the same, may also be proved in any other manner which the Trustee deems sufficient.

(3) The ownership of Securities shall be proved by the Security Register.

(4) If the Company shall solicit from the Holders any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, the Company may, at its option, fix in advance a record date for the determination of Holders entitled to give such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, but the Company shall have no obligation to do so. Such record date shall be the later of 10 days prior to the first solicitation of such action or the date of the most recent list of Holders furnished to the Trustee pursuant to Section 7.01. If such a record date is fixed, such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action may be given before or after the record date, but only the Holders of record at the close of business on the record date shall be deemed to be Holders for the purposes of determining whether Holders of the requisite proportion of Securities outstanding have authorized or agreed or consented to such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, and for that purpose the Securities outstanding shall be computed as of the record date; provided that no such authorization, agreement or consent by the Holders on the record date shall be deemed effective unless it shall become effective pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture not later than six months after the record date, and that no such authorization, agreement or consent may be amended, withdrawn or revoked once given by a Holder, unless the Company shall provide for such amendment, withdrawal or revocation in conjunction with such solicitation of authorizations, agreements or consents or unless and to the extent required by applicable law.

(5) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action by the Holder of any Security shall bind the Holder of every Security issued upon the registration of transfer thereof or in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof, in respect of anything done or suffered to be done by the Trustee or the Company in reliance thereon whether or not notation of such action is made upon such Security.

Section 1.05 Notices, etc., to Trustee and Company. Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Securityholders or other document provided or permitted by this Indenture to be made upon, given or furnished to, or filed with:

(1) the Trustee by any Securityholder or by the Company shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished or filed in writing to or with the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office, Attention: Corporate Trust Administration; or

(2) the Company by the Trustee or by any Securityholder shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder (except as provided in Section 5.0 1(4) or, in the case of a request for repayment, as specified in the Security carrying the right to repayment) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to the Company addressed to it at the address of its principal office specified in the first paragraph of this instrument, Attention: Chief Financial Officer, or at the address last furnished in writing to the Trustee by the Company.

Section 1.06 Notices to Securityholders; Waiver. Where this Indenture or any Security provides for notice to Securityholders of any event, such notice shall be sufficiently given (unless otherwise herein or in such Security expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each Securityholder affected by such event, at his address as it appears in the Security Register, not later than the latest date, and not earlier than the earliest date, prescribed for the giving of such notice. In any case where notice to Securityholders is given by mail, neither the failure to mail such notice, nor any defect in any notice so mailed, to any particular Securityholder shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Securityholders. Where this Indenture or any Security provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the Person entitled to receive such notice, either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Securityholders shall be filed with the Trustee, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.

In case, by reason of the suspension of regular mail service as a result of a strike, work stoppage or otherwise, it shall be impractical to mail notice of any event to any Securityholder when such notice is required to be given pursuant to any provision of this Indenture, then any method of notification as shall be satisfactory to the Trustee and the Company shall be deemed to be a sufficient giving of such notice.

Section 1.07 Conflict with Trust Indenture Act. If and to the extent that any provision hereof limits, qualifies or conflicts with the duties imposed by, or with another provision (an "incorporated provision") included in this Indenture by operation of, any of Sections 310 to 318, inclusive, of the Trust Indenture Act, such imposed duties or incorporated provision shall control.

Section 1.08 Effect of Headings and Table of Contents. The Article and Section headings herein and the Table of Contents are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

Section 1.09 Successors and Assigns. All covenants and agreements in this Indenture by the Company and the Guarantors, if any, shall bind their respective successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

Section 1.10 Separability Clause. In case any provision in this Indenture or in the Securities shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

Section 1.11 Benefits of Indenture. Nothing in this Indenture or in any Securities, express or implied, shall give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and their successors hereunder, any Authenticating Agent or Paying Agent, the Security Registrar and the Holders of Securities (or such of them as may be affected thereby), any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture.

Section 1.12                    Governing Law. This Indenture shall be construed in accordance with and governed by the laws of the State of New York.

Section 1.13                    Counterparts. This instrument may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

Section 1.14                    Judgment Currency. The Company agrees, to the fullest extent that it may effectively do so under applicable law, that (a) if for the purpose of obtaining judgment in any court it is necessary to convert the sum due in respect of the principal of, or premium or interest, if any, on the Securities of any series (the “Required Currency”) into a currency in which a judgment will be rendered (the “Judgment Currency”), the rate of exchange used shall be the rate at which in accordance with normal banking procedures the Trustee could purchase in the City of New York the Required Currency with the Judgment Currency on the New York Banking Day preceding that on which a final unappealable judgment is given and (b) its obligations under this Indenture to make payments in the Required Currency (i) shall not be discharged or satisfied by any tender, or any recovery pursuant to any judgment (whether or not entered in accordance with subsection (a)), in any currency other than the Required Currency, except to the extent that such tender or recovery shall result in the actual receipt, by the payee, of the full amount of the Required Currency expressed to be payable in respect of such payments, (ii) shall be enforceable as an alternative or additional cause of action for the purpose of recovering in the Required Currency the amount, if any, by which such actual receipt shall fall short of the full amount of the Required Currency so expressed to be payable and (iii) shall not be affected by judgment being obtained for any other sum due under this Indenture. For purposes of the foregoing, “New York Banking Day” means any day except a Saturday, Sunday or a legal holiday in the City of New York or a day on which banking institutions in the City of New York are authorized or required by law or executive order to close.

Section 1.15                    Legal Holidays. In any case where any Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, date established for payment of Defaulted Interest pursuant to Section 3.07, Stated Maturity or Maturity with respect to any Security or other day on which principal or interest is due, shall not be a Business Day, then (notwithstanding any other provision of this Indenture or any Security) payment of principal or interest need not be made on such date, but may be made on the next succeeding Business Day with the same force and effect as if made on the Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, date established for payment of Defaulted Interest pursuant to Section 3.07 or Stated Maturity or Maturity; provided that no interest shall accrue for the period from and after such Interest Payment Date or other such day, Redemption Date, date established for payment of Defaulted Interest pursuant to Section 3.07, Stated Maturity or Maturity, as the case may be, to the next succeeding Business Day.

Section 1.16                    Agent for Service; Submission to Jurisdiction; Waiver of Immunities and Jury Trial. The Company and each Guarantor agree that any suit, action or proceeding against the Company or any Guarantor arising out of or based upon this Indenture or the transactions contemplated hereby may be instituted in any State or Federal court in The City of New York, New York, and waives any objection which it may now or hereafter have to the laying of venue of any such proceeding, and irrevocably submits to the nonexclusive jurisdiction of such courts in any suit, action or proceeding. The Company and each Guarantor shall maintain in the Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York an office or agency to act as its authorized agent (the “Authorized Agent”) upon whom process may be served in any suit, action or proceeding arising out of or based upon this Indenture, any Security or the transactions contemplated herein or thereby which may be instituted in any State or Federal court in The City of New York, New York, and expressly accepts the nonexclusive jurisdiction of any such court in respect of any such suit, action or proceeding. The Company shall give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the location, and of any change in the location, of such office or agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain such office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee. The Company hereby designates the Corporate Trust Office as the Authorized Agent and appoints the Trustee its agent to receive all such process so long as such Corporate Trust Office remains the Authorized Agent. The Company and each Guarantor further agree to take any and all action as may be necessary to maintain such designation and appointment of such agent in full force and effect for a period of ten years from the date of this Indenture. If for any reason the Authorized Agent shall cease to be available to act as such authorized agent for the Company and any Guarantor, the Company and each Guarantor agree to designate a new agent in the State of New York on the terms and for the purpose of this Section 1.16. The Company and each Guarantor hereby represent and warrant that the Authorized Agent has accepted such appointment and has agreed to act as said agent for service of process, and the Company and each Guarantor agree to take any and all action, including the filing of any and all documents that may be necessary to continue such appointment in full force and effect as aforesaid. Service of process upon the Authorized Agent shall be deemed, in every respect, effective service of process upon the Company.

## ARTICLE II SECURITY FORMS

Section 2.01           Forms Generally. The Securities shall have such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by this Indenture and may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification and such legends or endorsements placed thereon, as may be required to comply with the rules of any securities exchange, or as may, consistently herewith, be determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of the Securities. Any portion of the text of any Security may be set forth on the reverse thereof, with an appropriate reference thereto on the face of the Security.

The definitive Securities shall be printed, lithographed or engraved or produced by any combination of these methods on steel engraved borders or may be produced in any other manner, all as determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities, subject, with respect to the Securities of any series, to the rules of any securities exchange on which such Securities are listed.

Section 2.02           Forms of Securities. Each Security shall be in one of the forms approved from time to time by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto. Prior to the delivery of a Security to the Trustee for authentication in any form approved by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, the Company shall deliver to the Trustee the Board Resolution by or pursuant to which such form of Security has been approved, which Board Resolution shall have attached thereto a true and correct copy of the form of Security which has been approved thereby or, if a Board Resolution authorizes a specific officer or officers to approve a form of Security, a certificate of such officer or officers approving the form of Security attached thereto. Any form of Security approved by or pursuant to a Board Resolution must be acceptable as to form to the Trustee, such acceptance to be evidenced by the Trustee's authentication of Securities in that form or a certificate signed by a Responsible Officer of the Trustee and delivered to the Company.

Section 2.03           Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication. The form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication for any Security issued pursuant to this Indenture shall be substantially as follows:

## TRUSTEE'S CERTIFICATE OF AUTHENTICATION

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

[TRUSTEE]

\_\_\_\_\_  
by

Authorized Signatory

Dated \_\_\_\_\_

### Section 2.04 Securities Issuable in the Form of a Global Security.

(1) If the Company shall establish pursuant to Sections 2.02 and 3.01 that the Securities of a particular series are to be issued in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities, then the Company shall execute and the Trustee or its agent shall, in accordance with Section 3.03 and the Company Order delivered to the Trustee or its agent thereunder, authenticate and deliver, such Global Security or Securities, which (i) shall represent, and shall be denominated in an amount equal to the aggregate principal amount of, the Outstanding Securities of such series to be represented by such Global Security or Securities, or such portion thereof as the Company shall specify in a Company Order, (ii) shall be registered in the name of the Depository for such Global Security or Securities or its nominee, (iii) shall be delivered by the Trustee or its agent to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository's instruction and (iv) shall bear a legend substantially to the following effect: "Unless this certificate is presented by an authorized representative of the Depository to Issuer or its agent for registration of transfer, exchange, or payment, and any certificate issued is registered in the name of the nominee of the Depository or in such other name as is requested by an authorized representative of the Depository (and any payment is made to the nominee of the Depository or to such other entity as is requested by an authorized representative of the Depository), ANY TRANSFER, PLEDGE, OR OTHER USE HEREOF FOR VALUE OR OTHERWISE BY OR TO ANY PERSON IS WRONGFUL inasmuch as the registered owner hereof, the nominee of the Depository, has an interest herein."

(2) Notwithstanding any other provision of this Section 2.04 or of Section 3.05, and subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) below, unless the terms of a Global Security expressly permit such Global Security to be exchanged in whole or in part for individual Securities, a Global Security may be transferred, in whole but not in part and in the manner provided in Section 3.05, only to a nominee of the Depository for such Global Security, or to the Depository, or a successor Depository for such Global Security selected or approved by the Company, or to a nominee of such successor Depository.

(3) (i) If at any time the Depository for a Global Security notifies the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depository for such Global Security or if at any time the Depository for the Securities for such series shall no longer be eligible or in good standing under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or other applicable statute or regulation, the Company shall appoint a successor Depository with respect to such Global Security. If a successor Depository for such Global Security is not appointed by the Company within 90 days after the Company receives such notice or becomes aware of such ineligibility, the Company will execute, and the Trustee or its agent, upon receipt of a Company Request for the authentication and delivery of individual Securities of such series in exchange for such Global Security, will authenticate and deliver, individual Securities of such series of like tenor and terms in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security in exchange for such Global Security.

(ii) The Company may at any time and in its sole discretion determine that the Securities of any series or portion thereof issued or issuable in the form of one or more Global Securities shall no longer be represented by such Global Security or Securities. In such event the Company will execute, and the Trustee, upon receipt of a Company Request for the authentication and delivery of individual Securities of such series in exchange in whole or in part for such Global Security, will authenticate and deliver individual Securities of such series of like tenor and terms in definitive form in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of such Global Security or Securities representing such series or portion thereof in exchange for such Global Security or Securities.

(iii) If specified by the Company pursuant to Sections 2.02 and 3.02 with respect to Securities issued or issuable in the form of a Global Security, the Depository for such Global Security may surrender such Global Security in exchange in whole or in part for individual Securities of such series of like tenor and terms in definitive form on such terms as are acceptable to the Company and such Depository Thereupon the Company shall execute, and the Trustee or its agent shall authenticate and deliver, without service charge, (1) to each Person specified by such Depository a new Security or Securities of the same series of like tenor and terms and of any authorized denomination as requested by such Person in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for such Person's beneficial interest as specified by such Depository in the Global Security; and (2) to such Depository a new Global Security of like tenor and terms and in an authorized denomination equal to the difference, if any, between the principal amount of the surrendered Global Security and the aggregate principal amount of Securities delivered to Holders thereof.

(iv) In any exchange provided for in any of the preceding three paragraphs, the Company will execute and the Trustee or its agent will authenticate and deliver individual Securities in definitive registered form in authorized denominations. Upon the exchange of the entire principal amount of a Global Security for individual Securities, such Global Security shall be canceled by the Trustee or its agent. Except as provided in the preceding paragraph, Securities issued in exchange for a Global Security pursuant to this Section shall be registered in such names and in such authorized denominations as the Depository for such Global Security, pursuant to instructions from its direct or indirect participants or otherwise, shall instruct the Trustee or the Security Registrar. The Trustee or the Security Registrar shall deliver at its Corporate Trust Office such Securities to the Persons in whose names such Securities are so registered.

ARTICLE III  
THE SECURITIES

Section 3.01            General Title; General Limitations; Issuable in Series; Terms of Particular Series. The aggregate principal amount of Securities which may be authenticated and delivered and Outstanding under this Indenture is not limited.

The Securities may be issued in one or more series as from time to time may be authorized by the Board of Directors. There shall be established in or pursuant to a Board Resolution or in an indenture supplemental hereto, subject to Section 3.12, prior to the issuance of Securities of any such series:

- (1)            the title of the Securities of such series (which shall distinguish the Securities of such series from Securities of any other series);
- (2)            the Person to whom any interest on a Security of such series shall be payable, if other than the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest;
- (3)            the date or dates on which the principal of the Securities of such series is payable
- (4)            the rate or rates (or manner of calculation thereof) at which the Securities of such series shall bear interest, if any, the date or dates from which such interest shall accrue, the Interest Payment Dates on which any such interest shall be payable and the Regular Record Date for any interest payable on any Interest Payment Date
- (5)            the place or places where the principal of and any premium and interest on Securities of such series shall be payable;
- (6)            the period or periods within which, the Redemption Price or Prices or the Repayment Price or Prices, as the case may be, at which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of such series may be redeemed or repaid (including the applicability of Section 11.09), as the case may be, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company or the Holder.
- (7)            the obligation, if any, of the Company to purchase Securities of such series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provisions or at the option of a Holder thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of such series shall be purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;
- (8)            if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof, the denominations in which Securities of such series shall be issuable;

(9) provisions, if any, with regard to the conversion or exchange of the Securities of such series, at the option of the Holders thereof or the Company, as the case may be, for or into new Securities of a different series or other securities;

(10) if other than U.S. dollars, the currency or currencies or units based on or related to currencies in which the Securities of such series shall be denominated and in which payments of principal of, and any premium and interest on, such Securities shall or may be payable;

(11) if the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of such series are to be payable, at the election of the Company or a Holder thereof, in a coin or currency (including a composite currency) other than that in which the Securities are stated to be payable, the period or periods within which, and the terms and conditions upon which, such election may be made;

(12) if the amount of payments of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of such series may be determined with reference to an index based on a coin or currency (including a composite currency) other than that in which the Securities are stated to be payable, the manner in which such amounts shall be determined;

(13) any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of such series pursuant to Sections 3.04, 3.05, 3.06, 9.06 and 11.07 and except for any Securities which, pursuant to Section 3.03, are deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder);

(14) provisions, if any, with regard to the exchange of Securities of such series, at the option of the Holders thereof, for other Securities of the same series of the same aggregate principal amount or of a different authorized series or different authorized denomination or denominations, or both;

(15) provisions, if any, with regard to the appointment by the Company of an Authenticating Agent in one or more places other than the location of the office of the Trustee with power to act on behalf of the Trustee and subject to its direction in the authentication and delivery of the Securities of any one or more series in connection with such transactions as shall be specified in the provisions of this Indenture or in or pursuant to such Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto;

(16) the portion of the principal amount of Securities of the series, if other than the principal amount thereof, which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 5.02 or provable in bankruptcy pursuant to Section 5.04;

(17) any Event of Default with respect to the Securities of such series, if not set forth herein, and any additions, deletions or other changes to the Events of Default set forth herein that shall be applicable to the Securities of such series;

(18) any covenant solely for the benefit of the Securities of such series and any additions, deletions or other changes to the provisions of Article VIII, Article X or Section 1.01 or any definitions relating to such Article that would otherwise be applicable to the Securities of such series;

(19) if Section 4.03 of this Indenture shall not be applicable to the Securities of such series and if Section 4.03 shall be applicable to any covenant or Event of Default established in or pursuant to a Board Resolution or in an indenture supplemental hereto as described above that has not already been established herein;

(20) if the Securities of such series shall be issued in whole or in part in the form of a Global Security or Securities, the terms and conditions, if any, upon which such Global Security or Securities may be exchanged in whole or in part for other individual Securities; and the Depository for such Global Security or Securities;

(21) if the Securities of such series shall be guaranteed, the terms and conditions of such Guarantees and provisions for the accession of the guarantors to certain obligations hereunder; and

(22) any other terms of such series, including, without limitations, any restrictions on transfer related thereto all upon such terms as may be determined in or pursuant to such Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto with respect to such series.

The form of the Securities of each series shall be established pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture in or pursuant to the Board Resolution or in the indenture supplemental hereto creating such series. The Securities of each series shall be distinguished from the Securities of each other series in such manner, reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, as the Board of Directors may determine.

Unless otherwise provided with respect to Securities of a particular series, the Securities of any series may only be issuable in registered form, without coupons.

Any terms or provisions in respect of the Securities of any series issued under this Indenture may be determined pursuant to this Section by providing for the method by which such terms or provisions shall be determined.

Section 3.02 Denominations. The Securities of each series shall be issuable in such denominations and currency as shall be provided in the provisions of this Indenture or in or pursuant to the Board Resolution or the indenture supplemental hereto creating such series. In the absence of any such provisions with respect to the Securities of any series, the Securities of that series shall be issuable only in fully registered form in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof.

Section 3.03 Execution, Authentication and Delivery and Dating. The Securities shall be executed on behalf of the Company by any Responsible Officer. The signature of any of these officers on the Securities may be manual or facsimile.

Securities bearing the manual or facsimile signatures of individuals who were at any time the proper officers of the Company shall bind the Company, notwithstanding that such individuals or any of them have ceased to hold such offices prior to the authentication and delivery of such Securities or did not hold such offices at the date of such Securities.

At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities executed by the Company to the Trustee for authentication; and the Trustee shall, upon Company Order, authenticate and deliver such Securities as in this Indenture provided and not otherwise.

Prior to any such authentication and delivery, the Trustee shall be provided with the Officers' Certificate required to be furnished to the Trustee pursuant to Section 1.02, and the Board Resolution and any certificate relating to the issuance of the series of Securities required to be furnished pursuant to Section 2.02, an Opinion of Counsel substantially to the effect that:

- (1) all instruments furnished to the Trustee conform to the requirements of the Indenture and constitute sufficient authority hereunder for the Trustee to authenticate and deliver such Securities;
- (2) the form and terms of such Securities have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture;
- (3) all laws and requirements with respect to the execution and delivery by the Company of such Securities have been complied with, the Company has the corporate power to issue such Securities and such Securities have been duly authorized and delivered by the Company and, assuming due authentication and delivery by the Trustee, constitute legal, valid and binding obligations of the Company enforceable in accordance with their terms (subject, as to enforcement of remedies, to applicable bankruptcy, reorganization, insolvency, moratorium or other laws and legal principles affecting creditors' rights generally from time to time in effect and to general equitable principles, whether applied in an action at law or in equity) and entitled to the benefits of this Indenture, equally and ratably with all other Securities, if any, of such series Outstanding;
- (4) when applicable, the Indenture is qualified under the Trust Indenture Act; and
- (5) such other matters as the Trustee may reasonably request; and, if the authentication and delivery relates to a new series of Securities created by an indenture supplemental hereto, also stating that all laws and requirements with respect to the form and execution by the Company of the supplemental indenture with respect to that series of Securities have been complied with, the Company has corporate power to execute and deliver any such supplemental indenture and has taken all necessary corporate action for those purposes and any such supplemental indenture has been duly executed and delivered and constitutes the legal, valid and binding obligation of the Company enforceable in accordance with its terms (subject, as to enforcement of remedies, to applicable bankruptcy, reorganization, insolvency, moratorium or other laws and legal principles affecting creditors' rights generally from time to time in effect and to general equitable principles, whether applied in an action at law or in equity).

The Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue thereof will adversely affect the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture.

Unless otherwise provided in the form of Security for any series, all Securities shall be dated the date of their authentication.

No Security shall be entitled to any benefit under this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose unless there appears on such Security a certificate of authentication substantially in the form provided for herein executed by the Trustee by manual or facsimile signature, and such certificate upon any Security shall be conclusive evidence, and the only evidence, that such Security has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if any Security shall have been authenticated and delivered hereunder but never issued and sold by the Company, and the Company shall deliver such Security to the Trustee for cancellation as provided in Section 3.09, for all purposes of this Indenture such Security shall be deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder and shall never be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture.

Section 3.04                      Temporary Securities. Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and, upon receipt of the documents required by Section 3.03, together with a Company Order, the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities which are printed, lithographed, typewritten or otherwise produced, in any authorized denomination, substantially of the tenor of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued and with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as the officers executing such Securities may determine, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

If temporary Securities of any series are issued, the Company will cause definitive Securities of such series to be prepared without unreasonable delay. After the preparation of definitive Securities, the temporary Securities of such series shall be exchangeable for definitive Securities of such series upon surrender of the temporary Securities of such series at the office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment, without charge to the Holder; and upon surrender for cancellation of any one or more temporary Securities the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a like principal amount of definitive Securities of such series of authorized denominations and of like tenor and terms. Until so exchanged the temporary Securities of such series shall in all respects be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series.

Section 3.05                      Registration, Transfer and Exchange. The Company shall keep or cause to be kept a register or registers (herein sometimes referred to as the "Security Register") in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall provide for the registration of Securities, or of Securities of a particular series, and of transfers of Securities or of Securities of such series. Any such register shall be in written form or in any other form capable of being converted into written form within a reasonable time. At all reasonable times the information contained in such register or registers shall be available for inspection by the Trustee at the office or agency to be maintained by the Company as provided in Section 10.02. There shall be only one Security Register per series of Securities.

Subject to Section 2.04, upon surrender for registration of transfer of any Security of any series at the office or agency of the Company maintained for such purpose in a Place of Payment, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in the name of the designated transferee or transferees, one or more new Securities of such series of any authorized denominations, of a like aggregate principal amount and Stated Maturity and of like tenor and terms.

Subject to Section 2.04, at the option of the Holder, Securities of any series may be exchanged for other Securities of such series of any authorized denominations, of a like aggregate principal amount and Stated Maturity and of like tenor and terms, upon surrender of the Securities to be exchanged at such office or agency. Whenever any Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Securities which the Securityholder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

All Securities issued upon any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities shall be the valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same debt, and entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture, as the Securities surrendered upon such registration of transfer or exchange.

Every Security presented or surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange shall (if so required by the Company or the Trustee) be duly endorsed, or be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustee duly executed, by the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing.

Unless otherwise provided in the Security to be registered for transfer or exchanged, no service charge shall be made on any Securityholder for any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, but the Company may (unless otherwise provided in such Security) require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 3.04, 9.06 or 11.07 not involving any transfer.

The Company shall not be required (i) to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Security of any series during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the mailing of a notice of redemption of Securities of such series selected for redemption under Section 11.03 and ending at the close of business on the date of such mailing, or (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any Security so selected for redemption in whole or in part.

**Section 3.06**                      **Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities.** If (i) any mutilated Security is surrendered to the Trustee, or the Company and the Trustee receive evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security, and (ii) there is delivered to the Company and the Trustee such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them harmless, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustee that such Security has been acquired by a protected purchaser, the Company shall execute and upon its written request the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in exchange for or in lieu of any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security, a new Security of like tenor, series, Stated Maturity and principal amount, bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

In case any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security has become or is about to become due and payable, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, pay such Security.

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

Every new Security issued pursuant to this Section in lieu of any destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall constitute an original additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of the same series duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities.

**Section 3.07**                      **Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved.** Unless otherwise provided with respect to such Security pursuant to Section 3.01, interest on any Security which is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date shall be paid to the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest.

Any interest on any Security which is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date (herein called "Defaulted Interest") shall forthwith cease to be payable to the registered Holder on the relevant Regular Record Date by virtue of his having been such Holder; and, except as hereinafter provided, such Defaulted Interest may be paid by the Company, at its election in each case, as provided in clause (1) or clause (2) below:

(1) The Company may elect to make payment of any Defaulted Interest to the Persons in whose names any such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a special record date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner (the "Special Record Date"). The Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each such Security and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause (1) provided. Thereupon the Trustee shall fix a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall be not more than 15 nor less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company of such Special Record Date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor to be mailed, first class postage prepaid, to the Holder of each such Security at his address as it appears in the Security Register, not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor having been mailed as aforesaid, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered on such Special Record Date and shall no longer be payable pursuant to the following clause (2).

(2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause (2), such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

If any installment of interest the Stated Maturity of which is on or prior to the Redemption Date for any Security called for redemption pursuant to Article XI is not paid or duly provided for on or prior to the Redemption Date in accordance with the foregoing provisions of this Section, such interest shall be payable as part of the Redemption Price of such Securities.

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section, each Security delivered under this Indenture upon registration of transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, which were carried by such other Security.

Section 3.08           Persons Deemed Owners. The Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee may treat the Person in whose name any Security is registered as the owner of such Security for the purpose of receiving payment of principal of (and premium, if any), and (subject to Section 3.07) interest on, such Security and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not such Security be overdue, and neither the Company, the Trustee nor any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

Section 3.09           Cancellation. All Securities surrendered for payment, redemption, registration of transfer, exchange or credit against a sinking fund shall, if surrendered to any Person other than the Trustee, be delivered to the Trustee and, if not already canceled, shall be promptly canceled by it. The Company may at any time deliver to the Trustee for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated and delivered hereunder which the Company may have acquired in any manner whatsoever, and all Securities so delivered shall be promptly canceled by the Trustee. No Security shall be authenticated in lieu of or in exchange for any Securities canceled as provided in this Section, except as expressly permitted by this Indenture. The Trustee shall dispose of all canceled Securities in accordance with its standard procedures and deliver a certificate of such disposition to the Company upon its written request therefor.

Section 3.10 CUSIP and CINS Numbers. The Company in issuing any Securities may use “CUSIP” and “CINS” numbers (if then generally in use) and, if so, the Trustee shall use “CUSIP” and “CINS” numbers in notices of redemption as a convenience to Securityholders; provided that any such notice may state that no representation is made as to the correctness of such numbers either as printed on such Securities or as contained in any notice of a redemption and that reliance may be placed only on the other identification numbers printed on such Securities, and any such redemption shall not be affected by any defect in or omission of such numbers in such notices of redemption.

Section 3.11 Computation of Interest. Unless otherwise provided as contemplated in Section 3.01, interest on the Securities shall be calculated on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30 day months.

Section 3.12 Delayed Issuance of Securities. Notwithstanding any contrary provision herein, if all Securities of a series are not to be originally issued at one time, it shall not be necessary for the Company to deliver to the Trustee an Officers’ Certificate, Board Resolution, indenture supplemental hereto, Opinion of Counsel or Company Order otherwise required pursuant to Sections 1.02, 2.02, 3.01 and 3.03 at or prior to the time of authentication of each Security of such series if such documents are delivered to the Trustee or its agent at or prior to the authentication upon original issuance of the first Security of such series to be issued; provided that any subsequent request by the Company to the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series upon original issuance shall constitute a representation and warranty by the Company that as of the date of such request, the statements made in the Officers’ Certificate or other certificates delivered pursuant to Sections 1.02 and 2.02 shall be true and correct as if made on such date.

A Company Order, Officers’ Certificate or Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto delivered by the Company to the Trustee in the circumstances set forth in the preceding paragraph may provide that Securities which are the subject thereof will be authenticated and delivered by the Trustee or its agent on original issue from time to time in the aggregate principal amount, if any, established for such series pursuant to such procedures reasonably acceptable to the Trustee as may be specified from time to time by Company Order upon the telephonic, electronic or written order of Persons designated in such Company Order, Officers’ Certificate, indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution (any such telephonic or electronic instructions to be promptly confirmed in writing by such Persons) and that such Persons are authorized to determine, consistent with such Company Order, Officers’ Certificate, indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution, such terms and conditions of said Securities as are specified in such Company Order, Officers’ Certificate, indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution.

ARTICLE IV  
SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE;  
DEFEASANCE

Section 4.01            Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture. Unless pursuant to Section 3.01 provision is made that this Section shall not be applicable to the Securities of any series, this Indenture shall cease to be of further effect with respect to any series of Securities (except as to any surviving rights of registration of transfer or exchange of Securities of such series expressly provided for herein or in the form of Security for such series), and the Trustee, on receipt of a Company Request and at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture as to such series, when:

(1)            either

(A) all Securities of that series theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than (i) Securities of such series which have been destroyed, lost or stolen and which have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 3.06 and (ii) Securities of such series for whose payment money in the Required Currency has theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereafter repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 10.03 have been delivered to the Trustee canceled or for cancellation; or

(B) all such Securities of that series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee canceled or for cancellation:

(i) have become due and payable, or

(ii) will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year, or

(iii) are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustee in the name, and at the expense, of the Company, and the Company, in the case of (i), (ii) or (iii) above, has irrevocably deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust for the purpose an amount in the Required Currency sufficient to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee canceled or for cancellation, for principal (and premium, if any) and interest to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable), or to the Stated Maturity or Redemption Date, as the case may be;

(2)            the Company has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company with respect to the Securities of such series; and

(3)            the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series have been complied with.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to any series of Securities, the obligations of the Company to the Trustee with respect to that series under Section 6.07 shall survive and the obligations of the Company and the Trustee under Sections 3.05, 3.06, 4.02, 10.02 and 10.03 shall survive such satisfaction and discharge.

**Section 4.02**      **Application of Trust Money.** Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 10.03, all money, property and securities deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 4.01 or Section 4.03 shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the series of Securities in respect of which it was deposited and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of the principal (and premium, if any) and interest for whose payment such money has been deposited with the Trustee; but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

Anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any money, property or securities deposited with and held by it as provided in Section 4.03 and this Section 4.02 which, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, are in excess of the amount thereof which would then be required to be deposited to effect an equivalent satisfaction and discharge, Discharge (as defined below) or covenant defeasance, provided that the Trustee shall not be required to liquidate any securities in order to comply with the provisions of this paragraph.

**Section 4.03**      **Defeasance Upon Deposit of Funds or Government Obligations.** Unless pursuant to Section 3.01 provision is made that this Section shall not be applicable to the Securities of any series, at the Company's option, either (a) the Company and the Guarantors, if any, shall be deemed to have been Discharged (as defined below) from its obligations with respect to any series of Securities after the applicable conditions set forth below have been satisfied or (b) the Company shall cease to be under any obligation to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth in Section 10.05 and Article VIII (and any other Sections or covenants applicable to such Securities that are determined pursuant to Section 3.01 to be subject to this provision), the Guarantors, if any, shall be released from the Guarantees and clause (4) of Section 5.01 of this Indenture (and any other Events of Default applicable to such Securities that are determined pursuant to Section 3.01 to be subject to this provision) shall be deemed not to be an Event of Default with respect to any series of Securities at any time after the applicable conditions set forth below have been satisfied:

(1)      the Company shall have deposited or caused to be deposited irrevocably with the Trustee as trust funds, specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of such series, (i) money in an amount, or (ii) the equivalent in securities of the government which issued the currency in which the Securities are denominated or government agencies backed by the full faith and credit of such government which through the payment of interest and principal in respect thereof in accordance with their terms will provide freely available funds on or prior to the due date of any payment, money in an amount, or (iii) a combination of (i) and (ii), sufficient, in the opinion (with respect to (ii) and (iii)) of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay and discharge each installment of principal (including mandatory sinking fund payments) and any premium of, interest on and any repurchase or redemption obligations with respect to the outstanding Securities of such series on the dates such installments of interest or principal or repurchase or redemption obligations are due (before such a deposit, if the Securities of such series are then redeemable or may be redeemed in the future pursuant to the terms thereof, in either case at the option of the Company, the Company may give to the Trustee, in accordance with Section 11.02, a notice of its election to redeem all of the Securities of such series at a future date in accordance with Article XI);

(2) no Event of Default or event (including such deposit) which with notice or lapse of time would become an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of such series shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit (other than an Event of Default resulting from the borrowing of funds to be applied to such deposit);

(3) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that Holders of the Securities of such series will not recognize income, gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of the Company's exercise of its option under this Section 4.03 and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amount and in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such option had not been exercised, and, in the case of Securities being Discharged, accompanied by a ruling to that effect from the Internal Revenue Service, unless, as set forth in such Opinion of Counsel, there has been a change in the applicable Federal income tax law since the date of this Indenture such that a ruling from the Internal Revenue Service is no longer required;

(4) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate stating that the deposit referred to in paragraph (1) above was not made by the Company with the intent of preferring the Holders over other creditors of the Company or with the intent of defeating, hindering, delaying or defrauding creditors of the Company or others; and

(5) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series have been complied with.

If the Company, at its option, with respect to a series of Securities, satisfies the applicable conditions pursuant to either clause (a) or (b) of the first sentence of this Section, then (A), in the event the Company satisfies the conditions to clause (a) and elects clause (a) to be applicable, each of the Guarantors, if any, shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by, and obligations under, its respective guarantee of the Securities of such series and to have satisfied all the obligations under this Indenture relating to the Securities of such series and (B) in either case, each of the Guarantors, if any, shall cease to be under any obligation to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth in any covenants applicable to such Securities that are determined pursuant to Section 3.01 to be subject to this provision), and any Events of Default applicable to such series of Securities that are determined pursuant to Section 3.01 to be subject to this provision shall be deemed not to be an Event of Default with respect to such series of Securities at any time thereafter.

"Discharged" means that the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by, and obligations under, the Securities of such series and to have satisfied all the obligations under this Indenture relating to the Securities of such series (and the Trustee, on receipt of a Company Request and at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), except (A) the rights of Holders of Securities to receive, from the trust fund described in clause (1) above, payment of the principal and any premium of and any interest on such Securities when such payments are due; (B) the Company's obligations with respect to such Securities under Sections 3.05, 3.06, 4.02, 6.07, 10.02 and 10.03; (C) the Company's right of redemption, if any, with respect to any Securities of such series pursuant to Article XI, in which case the Company may redeem the Securities of such series in accordance with Article XI by complying with such Article and depositing with the Trustee, in accordance with Section 11.05, an amount of money sufficient, together with all amounts held in trust pursuant to Section 4.02 with respect to Securities of such series, to pay the Redemption Price of all the Securities of such series to be redeemed; and (D) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustee hereunder. A "Discharge" shall mean the meeting by the Company of the foregoing requirements.

Section 4.04            Reinstatement. If the Trustee or Paying Agent is unable to apply any money, property or securities in accordance with Section 4.02 of this Indenture, by reason of any legal proceeding or by reason of any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, the Company's and, if applicable, the Guarantors' obligations under this Indenture and the Securities shall be revived and reinstated as though no deposit had occurred pursuant to Section 4.01 or 4.03 of this Indenture, as the case may be, until such time as the Trustee or Paying Agent is permitted to apply all such money, property or securities in accordance with Section 4.02 of this Indenture; provided that, if the Company has made any payment of principal of or interest on any Securities because of the reinstatement of its obligations, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights of the Holders of such Securities to receive such payment from the money, property or securities held by the Trustee or Paying Agent.

## ARTICLE V REMEDIES

Section 5.01            Events of Default. "Event of Default", wherever used herein, means with respect to any series of Securities any one of the following events (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body), unless such event is either inapplicable to a particular series or it is specifically deleted or modified in or pursuant to the indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution creating such series of Securities or in the form of Security for such series:

- (1)            default in the payment of any interest upon any Security of that series when it becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days; or
- (2)            default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security of that series at its Maturity; or
- (3)            default in the payment of any sinking or purchase fund or analogous obligation when the same becomes due by the terms of the Securities of such series; or
- (4)            default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant or warranty of the Company in this Indenture in respect of the Securities of such series (other than a covenant or warranty in respect of the Securities of such series a default in the performance of which or the breach of which is elsewhere in this Section specifically dealt with), all of such covenants and warranties in the Indenture which are not expressly stated to be for the benefit of a particular series of Securities being deemed in respect of the Securities of all series for this purpose, and continuance of such default or breach for a period of 90 days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Company by the Trustee or to the Company and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 3 3-1/3% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series, a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a "Notice of Default" hereunder; or
- (5)            the entry of an order for relief against the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof under Title 11, United States Code (the "Federal Bankruptcy Act") by a court having jurisdiction in the premises or a decree or order by a court having jurisdiction in the premises adjudging the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof a bankrupt or insolvent under any other applicable Federal or State law, or the entry of a decree or order approving as properly filed a petition seeking reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition of or in respect of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof under the Federal Bankruptcy Act or any other applicable Federal or State law, or appointing a receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or other similar official) of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof or of any substantial part of its property, or ordering the winding up or liquidation of its affairs, and the continuance of any such decree or order unstayed and in effect for a period of 90 consecutive days; or

(6) the consent by the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof to the institution of bankruptcy or insolvency proceedings against it, or the filing by it of a petition or answer or consent seeking reorganization or relief under the Federal Bankruptcy Act or any other applicable Federal or State law, or the consent by it to the filing of any such petition or to the appointment of a receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or other similar official) of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof or of any substantial part of its property, or the making by it of an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or the admission by it in writing of its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due, or the taking of corporate action by the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof in furtherance of any such action; or

(7) any other Event of Default provided in the indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution under which such series of Securities is issued or in the form of Security for such series.

Section 5.02 Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment. If an Event of Default described in paragraph (1), (2), (3), (4) or (7) (if the Event of Default under clause (4) or (7) is with respect to less than all series of Securities then Outstanding) of Section 5.01 occurs and is continuing with respect to any series, then and in each and every such case, unless the principal of all the Securities of such series shall have already become due and payable, either the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 33-1/3% in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series then Outstanding hereunder (each such series acting as a separate class), by notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by Holders), may declare the principal amount (or, if the Securities of such series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount as may be specified in the terms of that series) of all the Securities of such series and all accrued interest thereon to be due and payable immediately, and upon any such declaration the same shall become and shall be immediately due and payable, anything in this Indenture or in the Securities of such series contained to the contrary notwithstanding. If an Event of Default described in clause (4) or (7) (if the Event of Default under clause (4) or (7) is with respect to all series of Securities then Outstanding), of Section 5.01 occurs and is continuing, then and in each and every such case, unless the principal of all the Securities shall have already become due and payable, either the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 3 3-1/3% in aggregate principal amount of all the Securities then Outstanding hereunder (treated as one class), by notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by Holders), may declare the principal amount (or, if any Securities are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount as may be specified in the terms thereof) of all the Securities then Outstanding and all accrued interest thereon to be due and payable immediately, and upon any such declaration the same shall become and shall be immediately due and payable, anything in this Indenture or in the Securities contained to the contrary notwithstanding. If an Event of Default of the type set forth in clause (5) or (6) of Section 5.01 occurs and is continuing, the principal of and any interest on the Securities then Outstanding shall become immediately due and payable.

At any time after such a declaration of acceleration has been made with respect to the Securities of any or all series, as the case may be, and before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained by the Trustee as hereinafter in this Article provided, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if:

- (1) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay:
  - (A) all overdue installments of interest on the Securities of such series; and
  - (B) the principal of (and premium, if any, on) any Securities of such series which have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration, and interest thereon at the rate or rates prescribed therefor by the terms of the Securities of such series, to the extent that payment of such interest is lawful; and
  - (C) interest upon overdue installments of interest at the rate or rates prescribed therefor by the terms of the Securities of such series to the extent that payment of such interest is lawful; and
  - (D) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustee hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel and all other amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.07; and
- (2) all Events of Default with respect to such series of Securities, other than the nonpayment of the principal of the Securities of such series which have become due solely by such acceleration, have been cured or waived as provided in Section 5.13.

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

Section 5.03 Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee. The Company covenants that if:

- (1) default is made in the payment of any installment of interest on any Security of any series when such interest becomes due and payable; or
- (2) default is made in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security at the Maturity thereof; or
- (3) default is made in the payment of any sinking or purchase fund or analogous obligation when the same becomes due by the terms of the Securities of any series; and any such default continues for any period of grace provided with respect to the Securities of such series, the Company will, upon demand of the Trustee, pay to it, for the benefit of the Holder of any such Security (or the Holders of any such series in the case of clause (3) above), the whole amount then due and payable on any such Security (or on the Securities of any such series in the case of clause (3) above) for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, with interest, to the extent that payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable, upon the overdue principal (and premium, if any) and upon overdue installments of interest, at such rate or rates as may be prescribed therefor by the terms of any such Security (or of Securities of any such series in the case of clause (3) above); and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel and all other amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.07.

If the Company fails to pay such amounts forthwith upon such demand, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, may institute a judicial proceeding for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, and may prosecute such proceeding to judgment or final decree, and may enforce the same against the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities of such series and collect the money adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities, wherever situated.

If an Event of Default with respect to any series of Securities occurs and is continuing, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted herein, or to enforce any other proper remedy.

Section 5.04            Trustee May File Proofs of Claim. In case of the pendency of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, adjustment, composition or other judicial proceeding relative to the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or the property of the Company or of such other obligor or their creditors, the Trustee (irrespective of whether the principal of the Securities shall then be due and payable as therein expressed or by declaration or otherwise and irrespective of whether the Trustee shall have made any demand on the Company for the payment of overdue principal or interest) shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceedings or otherwise:

(i)                    to file and prove a claim for the whole amount of principal (or portion thereof determined pursuant to Section 3.01(16) to be provable in bankruptcy) (and premium, if any) and interest owing and unpaid in respect of the Securities and to file such other papers or documents as may be necessary and advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee (including any claim for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel and all other amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.07) and of the Securityholders allowed in such judicial proceeding; and

(ii)                  to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute the same; and any receiver, assignee, trustee, liquidator, sequestrator (or other similar official) in any such judicial proceeding is hereby authorized by each Securityholder to make such payment to the Trustee and in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to the Securityholders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due to it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, and any other amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.07.

Nothing herein contained shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Securityholder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of any Holder thereof, or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Securityholder in any such proceeding.

Section 5.05            Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities. All rights of action and claims under this Indenture or the Securities of any series may be prosecuted and enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Securities of such series or the production thereof in any proceeding relating thereto, and any such proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for the payment of the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agent and counsel and any other amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.07, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities of the series in respect of which such judgment has been recovered.

Section 5.06            Application of Money Collected. Any money collected by the Trustee with respect to a series of Securities pursuant to this Article shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such money on account of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, upon presentation of the Securities of such series and the notation thereon of the payment if only partially paid and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

FIRST: To the payment of all amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.07.

SECOND: To the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid upon the Securities of that series for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, respectively.

THIRD: To the Company.

Section 5.07            Limitation on Suits. No Holder of any Security of any series shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless:

- (1)            such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustee of a continuing Event of Default with respect to Securities of such series;
- (2)            the Holders of not less than 3 3-1/3% in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of such series shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in its own name as Trustee hereunder;
- (3)            such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustee indemnity reasonably satisfactory to it against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;
- (4)            the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity has failed to institute any such proceeding; and
- (5)            no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustee during such 60 day period by the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series; it being understood and intended that no one or more Holders of Securities of such series shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other Holders of Securities of such series, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other such Holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal and proportionate benefit of all the Holders of all Securities of such series.

Section 5.08            Unconditional Right of Securityholders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest. Notwithstanding any other provisions in this Indenture, the Holder of any Security shall have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and (subject to Section 3.07) interest on such Security on the respective Stated Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption or repayment, on the Redemption Date or Repayment Date, as the case may be) and to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment, and such right shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

Section 5.09                      Restoration of Rights and Remedies. If the Trustee or any Securityholder has instituted any proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, then and in every such case the Company, the Trustee and the Securityholders shall, subject to any determination in such proceeding, be restored severally and respectively to their former positions hereunder, and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustee and the Securityholders shall continue as though no such proceeding had been instituted.

Section 5.10                      Rights and Remedies Cumulative. No right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Securityholders is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

Section 5.11                      Delay or Omission Not Waiver. No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Holder of any Security to exercise any right or remedy accruing upon any Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of any such Event of Default or an acquiescence therein. Every right and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or to the Securityholders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Securityholders, as the case may be.

Section 5.12                      Control by Securityholders. The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series, provided that:

- (1)                      the Trustee shall have the right to decline to follow any such direction if the Trustee, being advised by counsel, determines that the action so directed may not lawfully be taken or would conflict with this Indenture or if the Trustee in good faith shall, by a Responsible Officer, determine that the proceedings so directed would involve it in personal liability or be unjustly prejudicial to the Holders not taking part in such direction, and
- (2)                      the Trustee may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustee which is not inconsistent with such direction.

Section 5.13                      Waiver of Past Defaults. The Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such series waive any past default hereunder with respect to such series and its consequences, except a default not theretofore cured:

- (1)                      in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security of such series, or in the payment of any sinking or purchase fund or analogous obligation with respect to the Securities of such series, or
- (2)                      in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which under Article IX cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security of such series.

Upon any such waiver, such default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured, for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any right consequent thereon.

Section 5.14            Undertaking for Costs. All parties to this Indenture agree, and each Holder of any Security by his acceptance thereof shall be deemed to have agreed, that any court may in its discretion require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses, against any party litigant in such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; but the provisions of this Section shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Trustee, to any suit instituted by any Securityholder, or group of Securityholders, holding in the aggregate more than 10% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series to which the suit relates, or to any suit instituted by any Securityholder for the enforcement of the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on an Security on or after the respective Stated Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption or repayment, on or after the Redemption Date or Repayment Date, as the case may be).

Section 5.15            Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws. The Company covenants (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) that it will not at any time insist upon, or plead, or in any manner whatsoever claim or take the benefit or advantage of, any stay or extension law wherever enacted, now or at any time hereafter in force, which may affect the covenants or the performance of this Indenture; and the Company (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) hereby expressly waives all benefit or advantage of any such law, and covenants that it will not hinder, delay or impede the execution of any power herein granted to the Trustee, but will suffer and permit the execution of every such power as though no such law had been enacted.

## ARTICLE VI THE TRUSTEE

Section 6.01            Certain Duties and Responsibilities. (a) Except during the continuance of an Event of Default with respect to any series of Securities:

(1)            the Trustee undertakes to perform such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

(2)            in the absence of bad faith on its part, the Trustee may, with respect to Securities of such series, conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions which by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements of this Indenture (but need not confirm or investigate the accuracy of mathematical calculations or other facts stated therein).

(b) In case an Event of Default with respect to any series of Securities has occurred and is continuing, the Trustee shall exercise with respect to the Securities of such series such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture and any indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution relating to such series of Securities, and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent man would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his own affairs.

(c) No provision of this Indenture shall be construed to relieve the Trustee from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act, or its own willful misconduct, except that:

(1) this Subsection shall not be construed to limit the effect of Subsection (a) of this Section;

(2) the Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer, unless it shall be proved that the Trustee was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts;

(3) the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith in accordance with the direction of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee, under this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series; and

(4) no provision of this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur any financial liability in the performance of any of its duties hereunder, or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, if it shall have reasonable grounds for believing that repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity against such risk or liability is not reasonably assured to it.

(d) Whether or not therein expressly so provided, every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct or affecting the liability of or affording protection to the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of this Section.

Section 6.02            Notice of Defaults. Within 90 days after the occurrence of any default hereunder with respect to Securities of any series, the Trustee shall transmit by mail to all Securityholders of such series, as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register, notice of all defaults hereunder known to the Trustee, unless such default shall have been cured or waived; provided, however, that, except in the case of a default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security of such series or in the payment of any sinking or purchase fund installment or analogous obligation with respect to Securities of such series, the Trustee shall be protected in withholding such notice if and so long as the board of directors, the executive committee or a trust committee of directors and/or Responsible Officers of the Trustee in good faith determine that the withholding of such notice is in the interests of the Securityholders of such series; and provided, further, that in the case of any default of the character specified in Section 5.0 1(4) with respect to Securities of such series no such notice to Securityholders of such series shall be given until at least 90 days after the occurrence thereof. For the purpose of this Section, the term "default", with respect to Securities of any series, means any event which is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default with respect to Securities of such series.

Section 6.03            Certain Rights of Trustee. Except as otherwise provided in Section 6.01:

(a) the Trustee may conclusively rely and shall be fully protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;

(b) any request or direction of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Company Request or Company Order and any resolution of the Board of Directors may be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution;

(c) whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, the Trustee (unless other evidence be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of bad faith on its part, rely upon an Officers' Certificate;

(d) the Trustee may consult with counsel and the written advice of such counsel or an Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon;

(e) the Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Securityholders pursuant to this Indenture, unless such Securityholders shall have offered to the Trustee security or indemnity reasonably satisfactory to it against the costs, expenses and liabilities which might be incurred by it in compliance with such request or direction;

(f) the Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture or other paper or document, but the Trustee, in its discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as it may see fit, and, if the Trustee shall determine to make such further inquiry or investigation, it shall be entitled to examine the books, records and premises of the Company, personally or by agent or attorney;

(g) the Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder;

(h) the Trustee shall not be charged with knowledge of any default (as defined in Section 6.02) or Event of Default with respect to the Securities of any series for which it is acting as Trustee unless either (1) a Responsible Officer of the Trustee assigned to the Corporate Trust Department of the Trustee (or any successor division or department of the Trustee) shall have actual knowledge of such default or Event of Default or (2) written notice of such default or Event of Default shall have been given to the Trustee by the Company or any other obligor on such Securities or by any Holder of such Securities;

(i) the Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it in good faith and believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture; and

(j) the rights, privileges, protections, immunities and benefits given to the Trustee, including, without limitation, its right to be indemnified, are extended to, and shall be enforceable by, the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder, and each agent, custodian and other Person employed to act hereunder.

Section 6.04            Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities. The recitals contained herein and in the Securities, except the certificates of authentication, shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and the Trustee assumes no responsibility for their correctness. The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities. The Trustee shall not be accountable for the use or application by the Company of Securities or the proceeds thereof.

Section 6.05            May Hold Securities. The Trustee, any Authenticating Agent, any Paying Agent, the Security Registrar or any other agent of the Company, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and, subject to Sections 6.08 and 6.13, may otherwise deal with the Company or any Guarantor, if applicable, with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, Authenticating Agent, Paying Agent, Security Registrar or such other agent.

Section 6.06            Money Held in Trust. Subject to the provisions of Section 10.03 hereof, all moneys in any currency or currency received by the Trustee shall, until used or applied as herein provided, be held in trust for the purposes for which they were received, but need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any money received by it hereunder except as otherwise agreed in writing with the Company.

Section 6.07            Compensation and Reimbursement. The Company agrees:

(1)            to pay to the Trustee from time to time reasonable compensation for all services rendered by it hereunder (which compensation shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust);

(2)            except as otherwise expressly provided herein, to reimburse the Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its agents and counsel), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as shall be determined to have been caused by its own negligence or bad faith; and

(3)            to indemnify the Trustee for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without negligence or bad faith on its part, arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of this trust, including the costs and expenses of defending itself against any claim or liability in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its powers or duties hereunder.

As security for the performance of the obligations of the Company under this Section the Trustee shall have a lien prior to the Securities upon all property and funds held or collected by the Trustee as such, except funds held in trust for the payment of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on particular Securities.

When the Trustee incurs expenses or renders services in connection with an Event of Default specified in Section 5.01(5) or (6), the expenses and the compensation for the services are intended to constitute expenses of administration under any bankruptcy law.

The Company's obligations under this Section 6.07 and any lien arising hereunder shall survive the resignation or removal of any Trustee, the discharge of the Company's obligations pursuant to Article IV of this Indenture and/or the termination of this Indenture.

**Section 6.08 Disqualification; Conflicting Interests.** The Trustee for the Securities of any series issued hereunder shall be subject to the provisions of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act during the period of time provided for therein. In determining whether the Trustee has a conflicting interest as defined in Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act with respect to the Securities of any series, there shall be excluded this Indenture with respect to Securities of any particular series of Securities other than that series. Nothing herein shall prevent the Trustee from filing with the Commission the application referred to in the second to last paragraph of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act.

**Section 6.09 Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility.** There shall at all times be a Trustee hereunder with respect to each series of Securities, which shall be either:

(i) a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America or of any State, authorized under such laws to exercise corporate trust powers and subject to supervision or examination by Federal or State authority, or

(ii) a corporation or other Person organized and doing business under the laws of a foreign government that is permitted to act as Trustee pursuant to a rule, regulation or order of the Commission, authorized under such laws to exercise corporate trust powers, and subject to supervision or examination by authority of such foreign government or a political subdivision thereof substantially equivalent to supervision or examination applicable to United States institutional trustees; in either case having a combined capital and surplus of at least \$50,000,000. If such corporation publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of the aforesaid supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such corporation shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. Neither the Company nor any Person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with the Company shall serve as trustee for the Securities of any series issued hereunder. If at any time the Trustee with respect to any series of Securities shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in Section 6.10.

**Section 6.10 Resignation and Removal.**

(a) No resignation or removal of the Trustee and no appointment of a successor Trustee pursuant to this Article shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Trustee under Section 6.11.

(b) The Trustee may resign with respect to any series of Securities at any time by giving written notice thereof to the Company. If an instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee shall not have been delivered to the Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee.

(c) The Trustee may be removed with respect to any series of Securities at any time by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of that series, delivered to the Trustee and to the Company. If an instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee shall not have been delivered to the Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of removal, the removed Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee.

(d) If at any time:

(1) the Trustee shall fail to comply with Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act pursuant to Section 6.08 with respect to any series of Securities after written request therefor by the Company or by any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of that series for at least six months, unless the Trustee's duty to resign is stayed in accordance with the provisions of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act, or

(2) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible under Section 6.09 with respect to any series of Securities and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any such Securityholder, or

(3) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting with respect to any series of Securities, or

(4) the Trustee shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation, then, in any such case, (i) the Company by a Board Resolution may remove the Trustee, with respect to the series, or in the case of clause (4), with respect to all series, or (ii) subject to Section 5.14, any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee and the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the series, or, in the case of clause (4), with respect to all series.

(e) If the Trustee shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting with respect to any series of Securities, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of the Trustee with respect to any series of Securities for any cause, the Company, by Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee for that series of Securities.

If, within one year after such resignation, removal or incapacity, or the occurrence of such vacancy, a successor Trustee with respect to such series of Securities shall be appointed by the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series delivered to the Company and the retiring Trustee, the successor Trustee so appointed shall, forthwith upon its acceptance of such appointment, become the successor Trustee with respect to such series and supersede the successor Trustee appointed by the Company with respect to such series. If no successor Trustee with respect to such series shall have been so appointed by the Company or the Securityholders of such series and accepted appointment in the manner hereinafter provided, subject to Section 5.14, any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of that series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to such series.

(f) The Company shall give notice of each resignation and each removal of the Trustee with respect to any series and each appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to any series by mailing written notice of such event by first-class mail, postage prepaid, to the Holders of Securities of that series as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register. Each notice shall include the name of the successor Trustee and the address of its principal Corporate Trust Office.

Section 6.11            Acceptance of Appointment by Successor. Every successor Trustee appointed hereunder shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the predecessor Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the predecessor Trustee shall become effective with respect to any series as to which it is resigning or being removed as Trustee, and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the predecessor Trustee with respect to any such series; but, on request of the Company or the successor Trustee, such predecessor Trustee shall, upon payment of its reasonable charges, if any, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor Trustee all the rights, powers and trusts of the predecessor Trustee, and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such predecessor trustee hereunder with respect to all or any such series, subject nevertheless to its lien, if any, provided for in Section 607. Upon request of any such successor Trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor Trustee all such rights, powers and trusts.

In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the predecessor Trustee and each successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any applicable series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto which shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the predecessor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series as to which the predecessor Trustee is not being succeeded shall continue to be vested in the predecessor Trustee, and shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such indenture supplemental hereto shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust and that each such Trustee shall be Trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee.

No successor Trustee with respect to any series of Securities shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor Trustee shall be qualified and eligible with respect to that series under this Article.

Section 6.12            Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business. Any corporation into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to all or substantially all of the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided such corporation shall be otherwise qualified and eligible under this Article, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities.

Section 6.13            Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company. The Trustee shall comply with TIA Section 311(a), excluding any creditor relationship listed in TIA Section 311(b). A Trustee who has resigned or been removed shall be subject to TIA Section 311(a) to the extent indicated.

Section 6.14            Appointment of Authenticating Agent. At any time when any of the Securities remain Outstanding the Trustee, with the approval of the Company, may appoint an Authenticating Agent or Agents with respect to one or more series of Securities which shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon original issuance, exchange, registration of transfer or partial redemption thereof or pursuant to Section 3.06, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. Wherever reference is made in this Indenture to the authentication and delivery of Securities by the Trustee or the Trustee's certificate of authentication, such reference shall be deemed to include authentication and delivery on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent and a certificate of authentication executed on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and shall at all times be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America, any State thereof or the District of Columbia, authorized under such laws to act as an Authenticating Agent, having a combined capital and surplus of not less than \$50,000,000 and, if other than the Company itself, subject to supervision or examination by Federal or State authority. If such Authenticating Agent publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of said supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such Authenticating Agent shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time an Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, such Authenticating Agent shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in this Section.

Any corporation into which an Authenticating Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which such Authenticating Agent shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to the corporate agency or corporate trust business of an Authenticating Agent, shall continue to be an Authenticating Agent, provided such corporation shall be otherwise eligible under this Section, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of the Trustee or the Authenticating Agent.

An Authenticating Agent may resign at any time by giving written notice thereof to the Trustee and, if other than the Company, to the Company. The Trustee may at any time terminate the agency of an Authenticating Agent by giving written notice thereof to such Authenticating Agent and, if other than the Company, to the Company. Upon receiving such a notice of resignation or upon such a termination, or in case at any time such Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee, with the approval of the Company, may appoint a successor Authenticating Agent which shall be acceptable to the Company and shall mail written notice of such appointment by first-class mail, postage prepaid, to all Holders of Securities of the series with respect to which such Authenticating Agent will serve, as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register. Any successor Authenticating Agent upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder, with like effect as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent. No successor Authenticating Agent shall be appointed unless eligible under the provisions of this Section.

The Company agrees to pay to each Authenticating Agent from time to time reasonable compensation for its services under this Section.

If an appointment with respect to one or more series is made pursuant to this Section, the Securities of such series may have endorsed thereon, in addition to the Trustee's certificate of authentication, an alternate certificate of authentication in the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

[Name of Authenticating Agent]

\_\_\_\_\_

by

As Authenticating Agent

\_\_\_\_\_

As Authorized Agent

Dated \_\_\_\_\_

ARTICLE VII  
SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY  
TRUSTEE AND COMPANY

Section 7.01            Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Securityholders. The Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee:

(1)            Semi-annually, not more than 15 days after December 15 and June 15 in each year in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, a list of the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities of each series as of such December 15 and June 15, as applicable, and

(2)            at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing, within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished; provided, however, that if and so long as the Trustee shall be the Security Registrar for Securities of a series, no such list need be furnished with respect to such series of Securities.

Section 7.02            Preservation of Information; Communications to Securityholders.

(a) The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, the names and addresses of Holders of Securities contained in the most recent list furnished to the Trustee as provided in Section 7.01 and the names and addresses of Holders of Securities received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar, if so acting. The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in Section 7.01 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

(b) If three or more Holders of Securities of any series (hereinafter referred to as "applicants") apply in writing to the Trustee, and furnish to the Trustee reasonable proof that each such applicant has owned a Security of such series for a period of at least six months preceding the date of such application, and such application states that the applicants desire to communicate with other Holders of Securities of such series or with the Holders of all Securities with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under such Securities and is accompanied by a copy of the form of proxy or other communication which such applicants propose to transmit, then the Trustee shall, within five Business Days after the receipt of such application, at its election, either:

(1) afford such applicants access to the information preserved at the time by the Trustee in accordance with Section 7.02(a), or

(2) inform such applicants as to the approximate number of Holders of Securities of such series or all Securities, as the case may be, whose names and addresses appear in the information preserved at the time by the Trustee in accordance with Section 7.02(a), and as to the approximate cost of mailing to such Securityholders the form of proxy or other communication, if any, specified in such application. If the Trustee shall elect not to afford such applicants access to such information, the Trustee shall, upon the written request of such applicants, mail to each Holder of a Security of such series or to all Securityholders, as the case may be, whose names and addresses appear in the information preserved at the time by the Trustee in accordance with Section 7.02(a), a copy of the form of proxy or other communication which is specified in such request, with reasonable promptness after a tender to the Trustee of the material to be mailed and of payment, or provision for the payment, of the reasonable expenses of mailing, unless, within five days after such tender, the Trustee shall mail to such applicants and file with the Commission, together with a copy of the material to be mailed, a written statement to the effect that, in the opinion of the Trustee, such mailing would be contrary to the best interests of the Holders of Securities of such series or all Securityholders, as the case may be, or would be in violation of applicable law. Such written statement shall specify the basis of such opinion. If the Commission, after opportunity for a hearing upon the objections specified in the written statement so filed, shall enter an order refusing to sustain any of such objections or if, after the entry of an order sustaining one or more of such objections, the Commission shall find, after notice and opportunity for hearing, that all the objections so sustained have been met and shall enter an order so declaring, the Trustee shall mail copies of such material to all Securityholders of such series or all Securityholders, as the case may be, with reasonable promptness after the entry of such order and the renewal of such tender; otherwise the Trustee shall be relieved of any obligation or duty to such applicants respecting their application.

(c) Every Holder of Securities, by receiving and holding the same, agrees with the Company and the Trustee that neither the Company nor the Trustee shall be held accountable by reason of the disclosure of any such information as to the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities in accordance with Section 7.02(b), regardless of the source from which such information was derived, and that the Trustee shall not be held accountable by reason of mailing any material pursuant to a request made under Section 7.02(b).

#### Section 7.03                      Reports by Trustee.

(a) Within 60 days after May 15 of each year commencing with the first May 15 after the issuance of Securities, the Trustee shall transmit by mail, at the Company's expense, to all Holders as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register, as provided in Trust Indenture Act 313(c), a brief report dated as of May 15 in accordance with and with respect to the matters required by Trust Indenture Act Section 313(a).

(b) The Trustee shall transmit by mail, at the Company's expense, to all Holders as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register, as provided in Trust Indenture Act 313(c), a brief report in accordance with and with respect to the matters required by Trust Indenture Act Section 313(b).

(c) A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Holders, be furnished to the Company and, in accordance with Trust Indenture Act Section 313(d), be filed by the Trustee with each stock exchange upon which the Securities are listed, and also with the Commission.

**Section 7.04**                **Reports by Company.** The Company shall file with the Trustee, and transmit to Holders, such information, documents and other reports, and such summaries thereof, as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided pursuant to such Act; provided that any such information, documents or reports required to be filed with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 shall be filed with the Trustee within 15 days after the same is so required to be filed with the Commission. The Company also shall comply with the other provisions of Trust Indenture Act Section 314(a). Delivery of such reports, information and documents to the Trustee is for informational purposes only and the Trustee's receipt of such shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Company's compliance with any of its covenants hereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on Officers' Certificates).

## ARTICLE VIII CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE OR TRANSFER

**Section 8.01**                **Consolidation, Merger, Conveyance or Transfer on Certain Terms .** Except as otherwise set forth in an indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution creating such series of Securities or in the form of security for such Series, the Company shall not consolidate with or merge into any other Person or convey or transfer its properties and assets substantially as an entirety to any Person, unless:

(1)                the Person formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or the Person which acquires by conveyance or transfer the properties and assets of the Company substantially as an entirety shall be organized and existing under the laws of the United States of America or any State thereof or the District of Columbia, and shall expressly assume, by an indenture supplemental hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustee, in form reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on all the Securities and the performance of every covenant of this Indenture (as supplemented from time to time) on the part of the Company to be performed or observed;

(2)                immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no Event of Default, and no event which, after notice or lapse of time, or both, would become an Event of Default, shall have happened and be continuing; and

(3)                the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel each stating that such consolidation, merger, conveyance or transfer and such indenture supplemental hereto comply with this Article and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

**Section 8.02**                **Successor Person Substituted.** Upon any consolidation or merger, or any conveyance or transfer of the properties and assets of the Company substantially as an entirety in accordance with Section 8.01, the successor Person formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or to which such conveyance or transfer is made shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor had been named as the Company herein. In the event of any such conveyance or transfer, the Company as the predecessor shall be discharged from all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities and may be dissolved, wound up or liquidated at any time thereafter.

ARTICLE IX  
SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

Section 9.01           Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Securityholders. Except as otherwise set forth in an indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution creating such series of Securities or in the form of Security for such series, without the consent of the Holders of any Securities, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee, at any time and from time to time, may enter into one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in form reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, for any of the following purposes:

(1)           to evidence the succession of another corporation or Person to the Company or any Guarantor, if any, and the assumption by any such successor of the respective covenants of the Company or any Guarantor herein and in the Securities contained; or

(2)           to add to the covenants of the Company or any Guarantor, if any, or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company or any Guarantor, for the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of any or all series (and if such covenants or the surrender of such right or power are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants are expressly being included or such surrenders are expressly being made solely for the benefit of one or more specified series); or

(3)           to cure any ambiguity, to correct or supplement any provision herein which may be inconsistent with any other provision herein, or to make any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Indenture; or

(4)           to add to this Indenture such provisions as may be expressly permitted by the TIA, excluding, however, the provisions referred to in Section 3 16(a)(2) of the TIA as in effect at the date as of which this instrument was executed or any corresponding provision in any similar federal statute hereafter enacted; or

(5)           to establish any form of Security, as provided in Article II, to provide for the issuance of any series of Securities as provided in Article III and to set forth the terms thereof, and/or to add to the rights of the Holders of the Securities of any series; or

(6)           to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment by another corporation as a successor Trustee hereunder with respect to one or more series of Securities and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, pursuant to Section 6.11; or

(7)           to add any additional Events of Default in respect of the Securities of any or all series (and if such additional Events of Default are to be in respect of less than all series of Securities, stating that such Events of Default are expressly being included solely for the benefit of one or more specified series); or

(8) to provide for uncertificated Securities in addition to or in place of certificated Securities and to provide for bearer Securities; provided that uncertificated Securities are issued in registered form for purposes of Section 163(f) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or in a manner such that the uncertificated Securities are described in Section 163(f)(2)(B) of such Internal Revenue Code; or

(9) to provide for the terms and conditions of conversion into Common Stock or other Marketable Securities of the Securities of any series which are convertible into Common Stock or other Marketable Securities, if any; or

(10) to secure the Securities of any series; or

(11) to add Guarantees in respect of any series or all of the Securities; or

(12) to make any other change that does not adversely affect the rights of the Holders of any or all series of Securities; or

(13) to make any change necessary to comply with any requirement of the Commission in connection with the qualification of this Indenture or any supplemental indenture under the Trust Indenture Act.

No supplemental indenture for the purposes identified in clauses (2), (3) or (5) above may be entered into if to do so would adversely affect the rights of the Holders of Outstanding Securities of any series in any material respect.

Section 9.02 Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Securityholders. Except as otherwise set forth in an indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution creating such series of Securities or in the form of security for such Series, with the consent of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of all series affected by such supplemental indenture or indentures (acting as one class), by Act of said Holders delivered to the Company and the Trustee (in accordance with Section 1.04 hereof), the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee may enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of the Securities of each such series under this Indenture; provided, however, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby:

(1) change the Maturity of the principal of, or the Stated Maturity of any premium on, or any installment of interest on, any Security, or reduce the principal amount thereof or the interest or any premium thereon, or change the method of computing the amount of principal thereof or interest thereon on any date or change any Place of Payment where, or the coin or currency in which, any Security or any premium or interest thereon is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after the Maturity or the Stated Maturity, as the case may be, thereof (or, in the case of redemption or repayment, on or after the Redemption Date or the Repayment Date, as the case may be), or alter the provisions of this Indenture so as to affect adversely the terms, if any, of conversion of any Securities into Common Stock or other securities; or

(2) reduce the percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, the consent of whose Holders is required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of whose Holders is required for any waiver of compliance with certain provisions of this Indenture or certain defaults hereunder and their consequences, provided for in this Indenture; or

(3) modify any of the provisions of this Section 9.02, Section 5.13 or Section 10.06, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby; or

(4) impair or adversely affect the right of any Holder to institute suit for the enforcement of any payment on, or with respect to, the Securities of any series on or after the Stated Maturity of such Securities (or in the case of redemption, on or after the Redemption Date); or

(5) amend or modify Section 12.01 of this Indenture in any manner adverse to the rights of the Holders of the Outstanding Securities of any series.

For purposes of this Section 9.02, if the Securities of any series are issuable upon the exercise of warrants, each holder of an unexercised and unexpired warrant with respect to such series shall be deemed to be a Holder of Outstanding Securities of such series in the amount issuable upon the exercise of such warrant. For such purposes, the ownership of any such warrant shall be determined by the Company in a manner consistent with customary commercial practices. The Trustee for such series shall be entitled to rely on an Officers' Certificate as to the principal amount of Securities of such series in respect of which consents shall have been executed by holders of such warrants.

A supplemental indenture which changes or eliminates any covenant or other provision of this Indenture which has expressly been included solely for the benefit of one or more particular series of Securities, or which modifies the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series with respect to such covenant or other provision, shall be deemed not to affect the rights under this Indenture of Holders of Securities of any other series.

It shall not be necessary for any Act of Securityholders under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such Act shall approve the substance thereof.

**Section 9.03** Execution of Supplemental Indentures. In executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article or the modifications thereby of the trusts created by this Indenture, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 6.01) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture. The Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such supplemental indenture which affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

**Section 9.04** Effect of Supplemental Indentures. Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture under this Article, this Indenture shall be modified in accordance therewith, and such supplemental indenture shall form a part of this Indenture for all purposes; and every Holder of Securities theretofore or thereafter authenticated and delivered hereunder shall be bound thereby to the extent provided therein.

**Section 9.05** Conformity with Trust Indenture Act. Every supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article shall conform to the requirements of TIA as then in effect.

**Section 9.06** Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures. Securities authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to this Article may, and shall if required by the Trustee, bear a notation in form approved by the Trustee as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Trustee and the Board of Directors, to any such supplemental indenture may be prepared and executed by the Company and authenticated and delivered by the Trustee in exchange for Outstanding Securities.

Section 9.07 Notice of Supplemental Indentures. Promptly after the execution by the Company, any affected Guarantor and the Trustee of any Supplemental Indenture pursuant to the provisions of Section 9.02, the Company shall give notice thereof to the Securityholders of each Outstanding Security affected, in the manner provided for in Section 1.06, setting forth in general terms the substance of such Supplemental Indenture. Any failure by the Company to mail such notice, or any defect therein, shall not, however, in any way impair or affect the validity of any such amendment or waiver.

Section 9.08 Revocation and Effect of Consents, Waivers and Actions. Until an amendment, waiver or other action by Securityholders becomes effective, a consent to it or any other action by a Securityholder of any series hereunder is a continuing consent by such Securityholder and every subsequent Securityholder of that Security, even if notation of the consent, waiver or action is not made on such Security. However, any such Securityholder or subsequent Securityholder may revoke the consent, waiver or action as to such Securityholder's Security if the Trustee receives the notice of revocation before the consent of the requisite aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series affected then outstanding has been obtained and not revoked. After an amendment, waiver or action becomes effective, it shall bind every Securityholder of the affected series, except as provided in Section 9.02.

The Company may, but shall not be obligated to, fix a record date for the purpose of determining the Securityholders entitled to consent to any amendment or waiver. If a record date is fixed, then, notwithstanding the first two sentences of the immediately preceding paragraph, those persons who were Securityholders at such record date (or their duly designated proxies), and only those persons, shall be entitled to consent to such amendment, supplement or waiver or to revoke any consent previously given, whether or not such persons continue to be Securityholders after such record date. No such consent shall be valid or effective for more than 90 days after such record date.

## ARTICLE X COVENANTS

Section 10.01 Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest. With respect to each series of Securities, the Company will duly and punctually pay the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on such Securities in accordance with their terms and this Indenture, and will duly comply with all the other terms, agreements and conditions contained in, or made in the Indenture for the benefit of, the Securities of such series.

Section 10.02 Maintenance of Office or Agency. The Company will maintain an office or agency in each Place of Payment where Securities may be presented or surrendered for payment, where Securities may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange, where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities and this Indenture may be served and where any Securities with conversion privileges, if any, may be presented and surrendered for conversion. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the location, and of any change in the location, of such office or agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain such office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee its agent to receive all such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

Unless otherwise set forth in, or pursuant to, a Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto with respect to a series of Securities, the Company hereby initially designates as the Place of Payment for each series of Securities, the Borough of Manhattan, the City and State of New York, and initially appoints the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office as the Company's office or agency for each such purpose in such city.

**Section 10.03** Money for Security Payments to Be Held in Trust. If the Company shall at any time act as its own Paying Agent for any series of Securities, it will, on or before each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on, any of the Securities of such series, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum sufficient to pay the principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided, and will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure to act.

Whenever the Company shall have one or more Paying Agents for any series of Securities, it will, on or prior to each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on, any Securities of such series, deposit with a Paying Agent a sum sufficient to pay the principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due, such sum to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such principal (and premium, if any) or interest, and (unless such Paying Agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

The Company will cause each Paying Agent other than the Trustee for any series of Securities to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such Paying Agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section, that such Paying Agent will:

- (1) hold all sums held by it for the payment of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on Securities of such series in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided;
- (2) give the Trustee notice of any default by the Company (or any other obligor upon the Securities of such series) in the making of any such payment of principal (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of such series; and
- (3) at any time during the continuance of any such default, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums so held in trust by such Paying Agent.

The Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to any series of Securities or for any other purpose, pay, or by Company Order direct any Paying Agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such Paying Agent in respect of each and every series of Securities as to which it seeks to discharge this Indenture or, if for any other purpose, all sums so held in trust by the Company in respect of all Securities, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same trusts as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such Paying Agent; and, upon such payment by any Paying Agent to the Trustee, such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such money.

Any money deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent, or then held by the Company, in trust for the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on any Security of any series and remaining unclaimed for two years after such principal (and premium, if any) or interest has become due and payable shall be paid to the Company on Company Request, or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and the Holder of such Security shall thereafter as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for payment thereof, and all liability of the Trustee or such Paying Agent with respect to such trust money, and all liability of the Company as trustee thereof, shall thereupon cease. The Trustee or such Paying Agent, before being required to make any such repayment, may at the expense of the Company mail to the Holders of the Securities as to which the money to be repaid was held in trust, as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register, a notice that such moneys remain unclaimed and that, after a date specified in the notice, which shall not be less than 30 days from the date on which the notice was first mailed to the Holders of the Securities as to which the money to be repaid was held in trust, any unclaimed balance of such moneys then remaining will be paid to the Company free of the trust formerly impressed upon it.

Section 10.04            Statement as to Compliance. The Company will deliver to the Trustee, within 120 days after the end of each fiscal year, a written statement signed by the principal executive officer, principal financial officer or principal accounting officer of the Company stating that:

(1)            a review of the activities of the Company during such year and of performance under this Indenture and under the terms of the Securities has been made under his supervision; and

(2)            to the best of his knowledge, based on such review, the Company has fulfilled all its obligations under this Indenture and has complied with all conditions and covenants on its part contained in this Indenture through such year, or, if there has been a default in the fulfillment of any such obligation, covenant or condition, specifying each such default known to him and the nature and status thereof.

For the purpose of this Section 10.04, default and compliance shall be determined without regard to any grace period or requirement of notice provided pursuant to the terms of this Indenture.

Section 10.05            Legal Existence. Subject to Article VIII, the Company will do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect its legal existence.

Section 10.06            Waiver of Certain Covenants. The Company may omit in respect of any series of Securities, in any particular instance, to comply with any covenant or condition set forth in Sections 10.04 or 10.05 or set forth in a Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto with respect to the Securities of such series, unless otherwise specified in such Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto, if before or after the time for such compliance the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of all series affected by such waiver (voting as one class) shall, by Act of such Securityholders delivered to the Company and the Trustee (in accordance with Section 1.04 hereof), either waive such compliance in such instance or generally waive compliance with such covenant or condition, but no such waiver shall extend to or affect such covenant or condition except to the extent so expressly waived, and, until such waiver shall become effective, the obligations of the Company and the duties of the Trustee in respect of any such covenant or condition shall remain in full force and effect. Nothing in this Section 10.06 shall permit the waiver of compliance with any covenant or condition set forth in such Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto which, if in the form of an indenture supplemental hereto, would not be permitted by Section 9.02 without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby.

ARTICLE XI  
REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES

Section 11.01      Applicability of Article. The Company may reserve the right to redeem and pay before Stated Maturity all or any part of the Securities of any series, either by optional redemption, sinking or purchase fund or analogous obligation or otherwise, by provision therefor in the form of Security for such series established and approved pursuant to Section 2.02 and on such terms as are specified in such form or in the Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto with respect to Securities of such series as provided in Section 3.01. Redemption of Securities of any series shall be made in accordance with the terms of such Securities and, to the extent that this Article does not conflict with such terms, the succeeding Sections of this Article. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Indenture, except in the case of redemption pursuant to a sinking fund, the Trustee shall not make any payment in connection with the redemption of Securities until the close of business on the Redemption Date.

Section 11.02      Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee. The election of the Company to redeem any Securities redeemable at the election of the Company shall be evidenced by, or pursuant to authority granted by, a Board Resolution. In case of any redemption at the election of the Company of less than all of the Securities of any series, the Company shall, at least 45 days prior to the Redemption Date fixed by the Company (unless a shorter notice shall be reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee), notify the Trustee of such Redemption Date and of the principal amount of Securities of such series and the Tranche (as defined in Section 11.03) to be redeemed.

In the case of any redemption of Securities (i) prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, or (ii) pursuant to an election of the Company which is subject to a condition specified in the terms of such Securities, the Company shall furnish the Trustee with an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with such restriction or condition.

Section 11.03      Selection by Trustee of Securities to Be Redeemed. If less than all the Securities of like tenor and terms of any series (a "Tranche") are to be redeemed, the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected not more than 45 days prior to the Redemption Date by the Trustee, from the Outstanding Securities of such Tranche not previously called for redemption, by such method as the Trustee shall deem fair and appropriate and which may include provision for the selection for redemption of portions of the principal of Securities of such Tranche of a denomination larger than the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of that series. Unless otherwise provided in the terms of a particular series of Securities, the portions of the principal of Securities so selected for partial redemption shall be equal to the minimum authorized denomination of the Securities of such series, or an integral multiple thereof, and the principal amount which remains outstanding shall not be less than the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of such series. If less than all the Securities of unlike tenor and terms of a series are to be redeemed, the particular Tranche of Securities to be redeemed shall be selected by the Company.

The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company in writing of the Securities selected for redemption and, in the case of any Security selected for partial redemption, the principal amount thereof to be redeemed.

Securities shall be excluded from eligibility for selection for redemption if they are identified by registration and certificate number in a written statement signed by an authorized officer of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at least 45 days prior to the Redemption Date (unless a shorter period shall be reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee) as being owned of record and beneficially by, and not pledged or hypothecated by either, (a) the Company or (b) an entity specifically identified in such written statement as being an Affiliate of the Company.

For all purposes of this Indenture, unless the context otherwise requires, all provisions relating to the redemption of Securities shall relate, in the case of any Security redeemed or to be redeemed only in part, to the portion of the principal of such Security which has been or is to be redeemed.

Section 11.04 Notice of Redemption. Notice of redemption shall be given by first-class mail, postage prepaid, mailed not less than 15 (unless otherwise provided in the Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto establishing the relevant series) nor more than 45 days prior to the Redemption Date, to each holder of Securities to be redeemed, at his address appearing in the Security Register.

All notices of redemption shall state:

- (1) the Redemption Date;
- (2) the Redemption Price;
- (3) if less than all Outstanding Securities of any series are to be redeemed, the identification (and, in the case of partial redemption, the respective principal amounts) of the Securities to be redeemed;
- (4) that on the Redemption Date the Redemption Price will become due and payable upon each such Security, and that interest, if any, thereon shall cease to accrue from and after said date;
- (5) the place where such Securities are to be surrendered for payment of the Redemption Price, which shall be the office or agency of the Company in the Place of Payment;
- (6) that the redemption is on account of a sinking or purchase fund, or other analogous obligation, if that be the case;
- (7) if such Securities are convertible into Common Stock or other securities, the Conversion Price or other conversion price and the date on which the right to convert such Securities into Common Stock or other securities will terminate; and
- (8) if applicable, that the redemption may be rescinded by the Company, at its sole option, pursuant to Section 11.09 of this Indenture upon the occurrence of a Redemption Rescission Event.

Notice of redemption of Securities to be redeemed at the election of the Company shall be given by the Company or, at the Company's request, by the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Company; provided that if the Trustee is asked to give such notice it shall be given at least five Business Days prior notice.

Section 11.05 Deposit of Redemption Price. On or prior to any Redemption Date and subject to Section 11.09, the Company shall deposit with the Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 10.03) an amount of money sufficient to pay the Redemption Price of all the Securities which are to be redeemed on that date. If any Security to be redeemed is converted into Common Stock or other securities, any money so deposited with the Trustee or a Paying Agent shall be paid to the Company upon Company Request or, if then so segregated and held in trust by the Company, shall be discharged from such trust.

Section 11.06      Securities Payable on Redemption Date. Notice of redemption having been given as aforesaid, the Securities so to be redeemed shall, subject to Section 11.09, on the Redemption Date, become due and payable at the Redemption Price therein specified and from and after such date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of the Redemption Price) such Securities shall cease to bear interest and any rights to convert such Securities shall terminate. Upon surrender of such Securities for redemption in accordance with the notice and subject to Section 11.09, such Securities shall be paid by the Company at the Redemption Price. Unless otherwise provided with respect to such Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, installments of interest the Stated Maturity of which is on or prior to the Redemption Date shall be payable to the Holders of such Securities registered as such on the relevant Regular Record Dates according to their terms and the provisions of Section 3.07.

If any Security called for redemption shall not be so paid upon surrender thereof for redemption, the principal shall, until paid, bear interest from the Redemption Date at the rate borne by the Security, or as otherwise provided in such Security.

Section 11.07      Securities Redeemed in Part. Any Security which is to be redeemed only in part shall be surrendered at the office or agency of the Company in the Place of Payment with respect to that series (with, if the Company or the Trustee so requires, due endorsement by, or a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustee duly executed by, the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing) and the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security without service charge, a new Security or Securities of the same series and Stated Maturity and of like tenor and terms, of any authorized denomination as requested by such Holder in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the principal of the Security so surrendered.

Section 11.08      Provisions with Respect to Any Sinking Funds. Unless the form or terms of any series of Securities shall provide otherwise, in lieu of making all or any part of any mandatory sinking fund payment with respect to such series of Securities in cash, the Company may at its option (1) deliver to the Trustee for cancellation any Securities of such series theretofore acquired by the Company or converted by the Holder thereof into Common Stock or other securities, or (2) receive credit for any Securities of such series (not previously so credited) acquired by the Company (including by way of optional redemption (pursuant to the sinking fund or otherwise but not by way of mandatory sinking fund redemption) or converted by the Holder thereof into Common Stock or other securities and theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, and if it does so then (i) Securities so delivered or credited shall be credited at the applicable sinking fund Redemption Price with respect to Securities of such series, and (ii) on or before the 60th day next preceding each sinking fund Redemption Date with respect to such series of Securities, the Company will deliver to the Trustee (A) an Officers' Certificate specifying the portions of such sinking fund payment to be satisfied by payment of cash and by delivery or credit of Securities of such series acquired by the Company or converted by the Holder thereof, and (B) such Securities, to the extent not previously surrendered. Such Officers' Certificate shall also state the basis for such credit and that the Securities for which the Company elects to receive credit have not been previously so credited and were not acquired by the Company through operation of the mandatory sinking fund, if any, provided with respect to such Securities and shall also state that no Event of Default with respect to Securities of such series has occurred and is continuing. All Securities so delivered to the Trustee shall be canceled by the Trustee and no Securities shall be authenticated in lieu thereof.

If the sinking fund payment or payments (mandatory or optional) with respect to any series of Securities made in cash plus any unused balance of any preceding sinking fund payments with respect to Securities of such series made in cash shall exceed \$50,000 (or a lesser sum if the Company shall so request), unless otherwise provided by the terms of such series of Securities, that cash shall be applied by the Trustee on the sinking fund Redemption Date with respect to Securities of such series next following the date of such payment to the redemption of Securities of such series at the applicable sinking fund Redemption Price with respect to Securities of such series, together with accrued interest, if any, to the date fixed for redemption, with the effect provided in Section 11.06. The Trustee shall select, in the manner provided in Section 11.03, for redemption on such sinking fund Redemption Date a sufficient principal amount of Securities of such series to utilize that cash and shall thereupon cause notice of redemption of the Securities of such series for the sinking fund to be given in the manner provided in Section 11.04 (and with the effect provided in Section 11.06) for the redemption of Securities in part at the option of the Company. Any sinking fund moneys not so applied or allocated by the Trustee to the redemption of Securities of such series shall be added to the next cash sinking fund payment with respect to Securities of such series received by the Trustee and, together with such payment, shall be applied in accordance with the provisions of this Section 11.08. Any and all sinking fund moneys with respect to Securities of any series held by the Trustee at the Maturity of Securities of such series, and not held for the payment or redemption of particular Securities of such series, shall be applied by the Trustee, together with other moneys, if necessary, to be deposited sufficient for the purpose, to the payment of the principal of the Securities of such series at Maturity.

On or before each sinking fund Redemption Date provided with respect to Securities of any series, the Company shall pay to the Trustee in cash a sum equal to all accrued interest, if any, to the date fixed for redemption on Securities to be redeemed on such sinking fund Redemption Date pursuant to this Section 11.08.

**Section 11.09            Rescission of Redemption.** In the event that this Section 11.09 is specified to be applicable to a series of Securities pursuant to Section 3.01 and a Redemption Rescission Event shall occur following any day on which a notice of redemption shall have been given pursuant to Section 11.04 hereof but at or prior to the time and date fixed for redemption as set forth in such notice of redemption, the Company may, at its sole option, at any time prior to the earlier of (i) the close of business on that day which is two Trading Days following such Redemption Rescission Event and (ii) the time and date fixed for redemption as set forth in such notice, rescind the redemption to which such notice of redemption shall have related by making a public announcement of such rescission (the date on which such public announcement shall have been made being hereinafter referred to as the "Rescission Date"). The Company shall be deemed to have made such announcement if it shall issue a release to the Dow Jones News Service, Reuters Information Services or any successor news wire service. From and after the making of such announcement, the Company shall have no obligation to redeem Securities called for redemption pursuant to such notice of redemption or to pay the Redemption Price therefor and all rights of Holders of Securities shall be restored as if such notice of redemption had not been given. As promptly as practicable following the making of such announcement, the Company shall telephonically notify the Trustee and the Paying Agent of such rescission. The Company shall give notice of any such rescission by first-class mail, postage prepaid, mailed as promptly as practicable but in no event later than the close of business on that day which is five Trading Days following the Rescission Date to each Holder of Securities at the close of business on the Rescission Date and to the Trustee and the Paying Agent. Each notice of rescission shall (A) state that the redemption described in the notice of redemption has been rescinded and (B) state that such form must be properly completed and received by the Company no later than the close of business on a date that shall be 15 Trading Days following the date of the mailing of such notice of rescission.

ARTICLE XII  
GUARANTEES

Section 12.01            Guarantees. Any series of Securities may be guaranteed by one or more of the Subsidiaries of the Company or other Persons. The terms and the form of any such Guarantee will be established in the manner contemplated by Section 3.01 for the particular series of Securities. Each Guarantor, as primary obligor and not merely as surety, will fully, irrevocably and unconditionally guarantee, to each Holder of Securities (including each Holder of Securities issued under the Indenture after the date of this Indenture) and to the Trustee and its successors and assigns (i) the full and punctual payment of principal of and interest on the Securities when due, whether at maturity, by acceleration, by redemption or otherwise, and all other monetary obligations of the Company under this Indenture (including obligations to the Trustee) and the Securities and (ii) the full and punctual performance within applicable grace periods of all other obligations of the Company under this Indenture and the Securities.

(a) Each of the Guarantors further agrees that its obligations hereunder shall be unconditional irrespective of the absence or existence of any action to enforce the same, the recovery of any judgment against the Company or any other Guarantor (except to the extent such judgment is paid) or any waiver or amendment of the provisions of this Indenture or the Securities to the extent that any such action or any similar action would otherwise constitute a legal or equitable discharge or defense of a guarantor (except that each such waiver or amendment shall be effective in accordance with its terms).

(b) Each of the Guarantors further agrees that each Guarantee constitutes a guarantee of payment, performance and compliance and not merely of collection.

(c) Each of the Guarantors further agrees to waive presentment to, demand of payment from and protest to the Company or any other Person, and also waives diligence, notice of acceptance of its Guarantee, presentment, demand for payment, notice of protest for nonpayment, the filing of claims with a court in the event of merger or bankruptcy of the Company or any other Person and any right to require a proceeding first against the Company or any other Person. The obligations of the Guarantors shall not be affected by any failure or policy on the part of the Trustee to exercise any right or remedy under this Indenture or the Securities of any series.

(d) The obligation of each Guarantor to make any payment hereunder may be satisfied by causing the Company or any other Person to make such payment. If any Holder of any Security or the Trustee is required by any court or otherwise to return to the Company or any Guarantor, or any custodian, trustee, liquidator or other similar official acting in relation to any of the Company or any Guarantor, any amount paid by any of them to the Trustee or such Holder, the Guarantee of such Guarantor, to the extent theretofore discharged, shall be reinstated in full force and effect.

(e) Each Guarantor also agrees to pay any and all reasonable costs and expenses (including reasonable attorneys' fees) incurred by the Trustee or any Holder of Securities in enforcing any of their respective rights under its Guarantees.

(f) Any term or provision of this Indenture to the contrary notwithstanding, the maximum aggregate amount of each of the Guarantees shall not exceed the maximum amount that can be guaranteed by the relevant Guarantor without rendering the relevant Guarantee under this Indenture voidable under applicable law relating to fraudulent conveyance or fraudulent transfer or similar laws affecting the rights of creditors generally.

*[Signature page follows]*

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed as of the day and year first above written.

Xenetic Biosciences, Inc.

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

[TRUSTEE], as Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Xenetic Biosciences, Inc.

and

\_\_\_\_\_

Trustee

INDENTURE

Dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_

Providing for Issuance of Subordinated Debt Securities in Series

\_\_\_\_\_

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>ARTICLE I</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Section 1.01 Definitions</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Section 1.02 Compliance Certificates and Opinions</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>Section 1.03 Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>Section 1.04 Acts of Securityholders</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>Section 1.05 Notices, etc., to Trustee and Company</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>Section 1.06 Notices to Securityholders; Waiver</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Section 1.07 Conflict with Trust Indenture Act</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Section 1.08 Effect of Headings and Table of Contents</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Section 1.09 Successors and Assigns</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Section 1.10 Separability Clause</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Section 1.11 Benefits of Indenture</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Section 1.12 Governing Law</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Section 1.13 Counterparts</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Section 1.14 Judgment Currency</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Section 1.15 Legal Holidays</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>Section 1.16 Agent for Service; Submission to Jurisdiction; Waiver of Immunities and Jury Trial</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>ARTICLE II</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>Section 2.01 Forms Generally</b>	<b>14</b>

<b>Section 2.02</b>	<b>Forms of Securities</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>Section 2.03</b>	<b>Form of Trustee’s Certificate of Authentication</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>Section 2.04</b>	<b>Securities Issuable in the Form of a Global Security</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>ARTICLE III</b>		<b>16</b>
<b>Section 3.01</b>	<b>General Title; General Limitations; Issuable in Series; Terms of Particular Series</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>Section 3.02</b>	<b>Denominations</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>Section 3.03</b>	<b>Execution, Authentication and Delivery and Dating</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>Section 3.04</b>	<b>Temporary Securities</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>Section 3.05</b>	<b>Registration, Transfer and Exchange</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>Section 3.06</b>	<b>Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>Section 3.07</b>	<b>Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>Section 3.08</b>	<b>Persons Deemed Owners</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>Section 3.09</b>	<b>Cancellation</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>Section 3.10</b>	<b>CUSIP and CINS Numbers</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>Section 3.11</b>	<b>Computation of Interest</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>Section 3.12</b>	<b>Delayed Issuance of Securities</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>ARTICLE IV</b>		<b>24</b>
<b>Section 4.01</b>	<b>Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>Section 4.02</b>	<b>Application of Trust Money</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>Section 4.03</b>	<b>Defeasance Upon Deposit of Funds or Government Obligations</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>Section 4.04</b>	<b>Reinstatement</b>	<b>27</b>

<b>ARTICLE V</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Section 5.01 Events of Default</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Section 5.02 Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>Section 5.03 Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>Section 5.04 Trustee May File Proofs of Claim</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>Section 5.05 Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>Section 5.06 Application of Money Collected</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>Section 5.07 Limitation on Suits</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>Section 5.08 Unconditional Right of Securityholders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>Section 5.09 Restoration of Rights and Remedies</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Section 5.10 Rights and Remedies Cumulative</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Section 5.11 Delay or Omission Not Waiver</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Section 5.12 Control by Securityholders</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Section 5.13 Waiver of Past Defaults</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Section 5.14 Undertaking for Costs</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Section 5.15 Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>ARTICLE VI</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Section 6.01 Certain Duties and Responsibilities</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Section 6.02 Notice of Defaults</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>Section 6.03 Certain Rights of Trustee</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>Section 6.04 Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities</b>	<b>36</b>

<b>Section 6.05</b>	<b>May Hold Securities</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>Section 6.06</b>	<b>Money Held in Trust</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>Section 6.07</b>	<b>Compensation and Reimbursement</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>Section 6.08</b>	<b>Disqualification; Conflicting Interests</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>Section 6.09</b>	<b>Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>Section 6.10</b>	<b>Resignation and Removal</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>Section 6.11</b>	<b>Acceptance of Appointment by Successor</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>Section 6.12</b>	<b>Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>Section 6.13</b>	<b>Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>Section 6.14</b>	<b>Appointment of Authenticating Agent</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>ARTICLE VII</b>		<b>42</b>
<b>Section 7.01</b>	<b>Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Securityholders</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>Section 7.02</b>	<b>Preservation of Information; Communications to Securityholders</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>Section 7.03</b>	<b>Reports by Trustee</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>Section 7.04</b>	<b>Reports by Company</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>ARTICLE VIII</b>		<b>43</b>
<b>Section 8.01</b>	<b>Consolidation, Merger, Conveyance or Transfer on Certain Terms</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>Section 8.02</b>	<b>Successor Person Substituted</b>	<b>44</b>
<b>ARTICLE IX</b>		<b>44</b>

<b>Section 9.01</b>	<b>Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Securityholders</b>	<b>44</b>
<b>Section 9.02</b>	<b>Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Securityholders</b>	<b>45</b>
<b>Section 9.03</b>	<b>Subordination Unimpaired</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>Section 9.04</b>	<b>Execution of Supplemental Indentures</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>Section 9.05</b>	<b>Effect of Supplemental Indentures</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>Section 9.06</b>	<b>Conformity with Trust Indenture Act</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>Section 9.07</b>	<b>Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>Section 9.08</b>	<b>Notice of Supplemental Indentures</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>Section 9.09</b>	<b>Revocation and Effect of Consents, Waivers and Actions</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>ARTICLE X</b>		<b>47</b>
<b>Section 10.01</b>	<b>Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>Section 10.02</b>	<b>Maintenance of Office or Agency</b>	<b>47</b>
<b>Section 10.03</b>	<b>Money for Security Payments to Be Held in Trust</b>	<b>48</b>
<b>Section 10.04</b>	<b>Statement as to Compliance</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>Section 10.05</b>	<b>Legal Existence</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>Section 10.06</b>	<b>Waiver of Certain Covenants</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>ARTICLE XI</b>		<b>50</b>
<b>Section 11.01</b>	<b>Applicability of Article</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>Section 11.02</b>	<b>Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee</b>	<b>50</b>

<b>Section 11.03</b>	<b>Selection by Trustee of Securities to Be Redeemed</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>Section 11.04</b>	<b>Notice of Redemption</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>Section 11.05</b>	<b>Deposit of Redemption Price</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>Section 11.06</b>	<b>Securities Payable on Redemption Date</b>	<b>52</b>
<b>Section 11.07</b>	<b>Securities Redeemed in Part</b>	<b>52</b>
<b>Section 11.08</b>	<b>Provisions with Respect to Any Sinking Funds</b>	<b>52</b>
<b>Section 11.09</b>	<b>Rescission of Redemption</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>ARTICLE XII</b>		<b>54</b>
<b>Section 12.01</b>	<b>Agreement of Subordination</b>	<b>54</b>
<b>Section 12.02</b>	<b>Payments to Securityholders</b>	<b>54</b>
<b>Section 12.03</b>	<b>Subrogation of Securities</b>	<b>55</b>
<b>Section 12.04</b>	<b>Authorization by Securityholders</b>	<b>56</b>
<b>Section 12.05</b>	<b>Notice to Trustee</b>	<b>56</b>
<b>Section 12.06</b>	<b>Trustee’s Relation to Senior Indebtedness</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>Section 12.07</b>	<b>No Impairment of Subordination</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>Section 12.08</b>	<b>Rights of Trustee</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>Section 12.09</b>	<b>Applicable to Paying Agents</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>ARTICLE XIII</b>		<b>57</b>
<b>Section 13.01</b>	<b>Guarantees</b>	<b>57</b>

## INDENTURE

THIS INDENTURE between Xenetic Biosciences, Inc., a Nevada corporation (hereinafter called the “Company”), having its principal office at 99 Hayden Ave, Suite 230, Lexington, Massachusetts 02421, and \_\_\_\_\_, as trustee (hereinafter called the “Trustee”), is made and entered into as of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

### RECITALS OF THE COMPANY

The Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance of its debentures, notes, bonds or other evidences of indebtedness, in an unlimited aggregate principal amount, to be issued in one or more fully registered series.

This Indenture is subject to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act that are deemed to be incorporated into this Indenture and shall, to the extent applicable, be governed by such provisions.

All things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company in accordance with its terms have been done.

### AGREEMENTS OF THE PARTIES

To set forth or to provide for the establishment of the terms and conditions upon which the Securities are and are to be authenticated, issued and delivered, and in consideration of the premises and the purchase of Securities by the Holders thereof, it is mutually agreed as follows, for the equal and proportionate benefit of all Holders of the Securities or of a series thereof, as the case may be:

### ARTICLE I DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION

Section 1.01 Definitions. For all purposes of this Indenture and of any indenture supplemental hereto, except as otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires:

- (1) the terms defined in this Article have the meanings assigned to them in this Article, and include the plural as well as the singular;
- (2) all other terms used herein which are defined in the Trust Indenture Act or by Commission rule under the Trust Indenture Act, either directly or by reference therein, have the meanings assigned to them herein;
- (3) all accounting terms not otherwise defined herein have the meanings assigned to them in accordance with GAAP and, except as otherwise herein expressly provided, the term “generally accepted accounting principles” with respect to any computation required or permitted hereunder shall mean such accounting principles and any accounting rules or interpretations promulgated by the Commission as are generally accepted in the United States of America at the date of this Indenture; and

(4) all references in this instrument to designated “Articles”, “Sections” and other subdivisions are to the designated Articles, Sections and other subdivisions of this instrument as originally executed. The words “herein”, “hereof” and “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

Certain terms, used principally in Article VI, are defined in that Article.

“Act” when used with respect to any Securityholder, has the meaning specified in Section 1.04.

“Affiliate” of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For the purposes of this definition, “control” when used with respect to any specified Person means the power to direct the management and policies of such Person, directly or indirectly, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise; and the terms “controlling” and “controlled” have meanings correlative to the foregoing.

“Authenticating Agent” means any Person authorized by the Company to authenticate Securities under Section 6.14.

“Board of Directors” means (i) the board of directors of the Company, (ii) any duly authorized committee of such board, (iii) any committee of officers of the Company or (iv) any officer of the Company acting, in the case of clauses (iii) or (iv), pursuant to authority granted by the board of directors of the Company or any committee of such board.

“Board Resolution” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or any Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Business Day” means, with respect to any series of Securities, unless otherwise specified in a Board Resolution, in an indenture supplemental hereto or an Officer’s Certificate with respect to a particular series of Securities, each day which is not a Saturday, Sunday or other day on which banking institutions in the pertinent Place or Places of Payment or the city in which the Corporate Trust Office is located are authorized or required by law or executive order to be closed.

“Closing Price” of the Common Stock or other Marketable Security, as the case may be, shall mean the last reported sale price of such stock or other Marketable Security (regular way) as shown on the Composite Tape of the Nasdaq (or, if such stock or other Marketable Security is not listed or admitted to trading on the Nasdaq, on the principal national securities exchange on which such stock or other Marketable Security is listed or admitted to trading, including the NYSE), or, in case no such sale takes place on such day, the average of the closing bid and asked prices on the Nasdaq (or, if such stock or other Marketable Security is not listed or admitted to trading on the Nasdaq, on the principal national securities exchange on which such stock or other Marketable Security is listed or admitted to trading, including the NYSE), or if such stock or other Marketable Security is not so reported, the average of the closing bid and asked prices as furnished by any member of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, selected from time to time by the Company for that purpose.

“Commission” means the Securities and Exchange Commission, as from time to time constituted, created under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or, if at any time after the execution of this instrument such Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties at such time.

“Common Stock” shall mean the Common Stock, par value \$0.001 per share, of the Company authorized at the date of this Indenture as originally signed, or any other class of stock resulting from successive changes or reclassifications of such Common Stock, and in any such case including any shares thereof authorized after the date of this Indenture.

“Company” means the Person named as the “Company” in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Company” shall mean such successor.

“Company Request”, “Company Order” and “Company Consent” mean a written request, order or consent, respectively, signed in the name of the Company by its Chairman of the Board, President, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer, Controller, General Counsel, Secretary or any Vice President, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Conversion Price” means, with respect to any series of Securities which are convertible into Common Stock or other Marketable Securities, the price per share of Common Stock or the price per designated unit of other Marketable Security at which the Securities of such series are so convertible as set forth in the Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto with respect to such series (or in any indenture supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to Section 9.0 1(9) with respect to such series), as the same may be adjusted from time to time in accordance with an indenture supplemental hereto.

“Corporate Trust Office” means the office of the Trustee at which at any particular time its corporate trust business shall be principally administered, which office at the date hereof is located at:

\_\_\_\_\_,  
Attn: \_\_\_\_\_

“Current Market Price” on any date shall mean the average of the daily Closing Prices per share of Common Stock or of such other Marketable Securities for any 30 consecutive Trading Days selected by the Company prior to the day in question, which 30 consecutive Trading Day period shall not commence more than 45 Trading Days prior to the day in question.

“Defaulted Interest” has the meaning specified in Section 3.07.

“Depository” means, unless otherwise specified by the Company pursuant to either Section 2.04 or 3.01, with respect to Securities of any series issuable or issued as a Global Security, The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York, or any successor thereto registered as a clearing agency under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or other applicable statute or regulation.

“Discharged” means that the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by, and obligations under, the Securities of such series and to have satisfied all the obligations under this Indenture relating to the Securities of such series (and the Trustee, on receipt of a Company Request and at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), except (A) the rights of Holders of Securities to receive, from the trust fund described in clause (1) above, payment of the principal and any premium of and any interest on such Securities when such payments are due; (B) the Company’s obligations with respect to such Securities under Sections 3.05, 3.06, 4.02, 6.07, 10.02 and 10.03; (C) the Company’s right of redemption, if any, with respect to any Securities of such series pursuant to Article XI, in which case the Company may redeem the Securities of such series in accordance with Article XI by complying with such Article and depositing with the Trustee, in accordance with Section 11.05, an amount of money sufficient, together with all amounts held in trust pursuant to Section 4.02 with respect to Securities of such series, to pay the Redemption Price of all the Securities of such series to be redeemed; and (D) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustee hereunder. A “Discharge” shall mean the meeting by the Company of the foregoing requirements.

“Event of Default” has the meaning specified in Article V.

“Federal Bankruptcy Act” has the meaning specified in Section 5.0 1(5).

“GAAP” means generally accepted accounting principles as such principles are in effect in the United States as of the date of this Indenture.

“Global Security”, when used with respect to any series of Securities issued hereunder, means a Security which is executed by the Company and authenticated and delivered by the Trustee to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository’s instruction, all in accordance with this Indenture and an indenture supplemental hereto, if any, or Board Resolution and pursuant to a Company Request, which shall be registered in the name of the Depository or its nominee and which shall represent, and shall be denominated in an amount equal to the aggregate principal amount of, all of the Outstanding Securities of such series or any portion thereof, in either case having the same terms, including, without limitation, the same original issue date, date or dates on which principal is due, and interest rate or method of determining interest.

“Guarantee” means the guarantees specified in Section 13.0 1(a).

“Guarantor” means any Person who guarantees any series of Securities issued hereunder as specified in Section 13.01(a).

“Holder”, when used with respect to any Security, means a Securityholder, which means a Person in whose name a security is registered in the Security Register.

“Indenture” or “this Indenture” means this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof and shall include the terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated by Section 3.01.

“Interest”, with respect to the Securities, means interest on the Securities; provided, that, when used with respect to an Original Issue Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, the term means interest payable after Maturity.

“Interest Payment Date”, when used with respect to any series of Securities, means the Stated Maturity of any installment of interest on those Securities.

“Marketable Security” means any common stock, debt security or other security of a Person which is (or will, upon distribution thereof, be) listed on the NYSE, the NYSE Amex, NASDAQ or any other national securities exchange registered under Section 6 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or approved for quotation in any system of automated dissemination of quotations of securities prices in the United States or for which there is a recognized market maker or trading market.

“Maturity”, when used with respect to any Securities, means the date on which the principal of any such Security becomes due and payable as therein or herein provided, whether on a Repayment Date, at the Stated Maturity or by declaration of acceleration, call for redemption or otherwise.

“NASDAQ” shall mean the NASDAQ Global Select Market, the NASDAQ Global Market or the NASDAQ Capital Market.  
“NYSE” shall mean the New York Stock Exchange, Inc.

“Officers’ Certificate” means a certificate signed by the Chairman of the Board, President, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer, Controller, General Counsel, Secretary or any Vice President, and delivered to the Trustee. Wherever this Indenture requires that an Officers’ Certificate be signed also by a financial expert or an accountant or other expert, such financial expert, accountant or other expert (except as otherwise expressly provided in this Indenture) may be in the employ of the Company, and shall be acceptable to the Trustee.

“Opinion of Counsel” means a written opinion of counsel, who may (except as otherwise expressly provided in this Indenture) be an employee of or of counsel to the Company, which is delivered to the Trustee.

“Original Issue Discount Security” means (i) any Security which provides for an amount less than the principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof, and (ii) any other security which is issued with “original issue discount” within the meaning of Section 1273(a) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the regulations thereunder.

“Outstanding”, when used with respect to the Securities or Securities of any series, means, as of the date of determination, all such Securities theretofore authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, except:

- (i) such Securities theretofore canceled by the Trustee or delivered to the Trustee for cancellation;
- (ii) such Securities for whose payment or redemption money in the necessary amount has been theretofore deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent in trust for the Holders of such Securities; provided that, if such Securities are to be redeemed, notice of such redemption has been duly given pursuant to this Indenture or provision therefor reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee has been made; and
- (iii) such Securities in exchange for or in lieu of which other Securities have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to this Indenture, or which shall have been paid pursuant to the terms of Section 3.06 (except with respect to any such Security as to which proof satisfactory to the Trustee is presented that such Security is held by a Person in whose hands such Security is a legal, valid and binding obligation of the Company).

In determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of such Securities Outstanding have given any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver hereunder, (i) the principal amount of any Original Issue Discount Security that shall be deemed to be Outstanding shall be the amount of the principal thereof that would be due and payable as of the date of the taking of such action upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof, and (ii) Securities owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding. In determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying upon any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver, only Securities which a Responsible Officer assigned to the Corporate Trust Department of the Trustee knows to be owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or such other obligor shall be so disregarded. Securities so owned which have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding if the pledgee establishes to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee’s right to act as owner with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or such other obligor.

“Paying Agent” means any Person authorized by the Company to pay the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on any Securities on behalf of the Company. The Company initially authorizes the Trustee to act as Paying Agent for the Securities on its behalf. The Company may at any time and from time to time authorize one or more Persons to act as Paying Agent in addition to or in place of the Trustee with respect to any series of Securities issued under this Indenture.

“Person” means any individual, corporation, limited liability company, partnership, joint venture, association, joint-stock company, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

“Place of Payment” means with respect to any series of Securities issued hereunder the city or political subdivision so designated with respect to the series of Securities in question in accordance with the provisions of Section 3.01.

“Predecessor Securities” of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 3.06 in lieu of a lost, destroyed or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the lost, destroyed or stolen Security.

“Redemption Date”, when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the date fixed for such redemption by or pursuant to this Indenture.

“Redemption Price”, when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the price specified in the Security at which it is to be redeemed pursuant to this Indenture.

“Redemption Rescission Event” shall mean the occurrence of (a) any general suspension of trading in, or limitation on prices for, securities on the principal national securities exchange on which shares of Common Stock or Marketable Securities are registered and listed for trading (or, if shares of Common Stock or Marketable Securities are not registered and listed for trading on any such exchange, in the over-the-counter market) for more than six-and-one-half (6-1/2) consecutive trading hours, (b) any decline in either the Dow Jones Industrial Average or the S&P 500 Index (or any successor index published by Dow Jones & Company, Inc. or S&P) by either (i) an amount in excess of 10%, measured from the close of business on any Trading Day to the close of business on the next succeeding Trading Day during the period commencing on the Trading Day preceding the day notice of any redemption of Securities is given (or, if such notice is given after the close of business on a Trading Day, commencing on such Trading Day) and ending at the time and date fixed for redemption in such notice or (ii) an amount in excess of 15% (or if the time and date fixed for redemption is more than 15 days following the date on which such notice of redemption is given, 20%), measured from the close of business on the Trading Day preceding the day notice of such redemption is given (or, if such notice is given after the close of business on a Trading Day, from such Trading Day) to the close of business on any Trading Day at or prior to the time and date fixed for redemption, (c) a declaration of a banking moratorium or any suspension of payments in respect of banks by Federal or state authorities in the United States or (d) the occurrence of an act of terrorism or commencement of a war or armed hostilities or other national or international calamity directly or indirectly involving the United States which in the reasonable judgment of the Company could have a material adverse effect on the market for the Common Stock or Marketable Securities.

“Regular Record Date” for the interest payable on any Security on any Interest Payment Date means the date specified in such Security as the Regular Record Date.

“Repayment Date”, when used with respect to any Security to be repaid, means the date fixed for such repayment pursuant to such Security.

“Repayment Price”, when used with respect to any Security to be repaid, means the price at which it is to be repaid pursuant to such Security.

“Required Currency”, when used with respect to any Security, has the meaning set forth in Section 1.14.

“Responsible Officer”, when used with respect to the Trustee, means any officer of the Trustee with direct responsibility for the administration of this Indenture and also means, with respect to a particular corporate trust matter, any other officer to whom such matter is referred because of his knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject.

“Responsible Officer”, when used with respect to the Company, means any of the Chairman of the Board, President, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer, Controller, General Counsel, Secretary or any Vice President (or any equivalent of the foregoing officers).

“S&P” means Standard & Poor’s Rating Service or any successor to the rating agency business thereto.

“Security” or “Securities” means any note or notes, bond or bonds, debenture or debentures, or any other evidences of indebtedness, as the case may be, of any series authenticated and delivered from time to time under this Indenture.

“Security Register” shall have the meaning specified in Section 3.05.

“Security Registrar” means the Person who keeps the Security Register specified in Section 3.05. The Company initially appoints the Trustee to act as Security Registrar for the Securities on its behalf. The Company may at any time and from time to time authorize any Person to act as Security Registrar in place of the Trustee with respect to any series of Securities issued under this Indenture.

“Securityholder” means a Person in whose name a security is registered in the Security Register.

“Senior Indebtedness” of the Company or a Guarantor, as the case may be, means the principal of, premium, if any, interest on, and any other payment due pursuant to any of the following, whether outstanding at the date hereof or hereafter incurred or created:

- (i) all indebtedness of such Person for borrowed money (including any indebtedness secured by a mortgage, conditional sales contract or other lien which is (a) given to secure all or part of the purchase price of property subject thereto, whether given to the vendor of such property or to another or (b) existing on property at the time of acquisition thereof);
- (ii) all indebtedness of such Person evidenced by notes, debentures, bonds or other similar interests sold by such Person for money;
- (iii) all lease obligations of such Person which are capitalized on the books of such Person in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
- (iv) all indebtedness of others of the kinds described in either of the preceding clauses (i) or (ii) and all lease obligations of others of the kind described in the preceding clause (iii) assumed by or guaranteed in any manner by such Person or in effect guaranteed by such Person through an agreement to purchase, contingent or otherwise; and
- (v) all renewals, extensions or refundings of indebtedness of the kinds described in any of the preceding clauses (i), (ii) and (iv) and all renewals or extensions of lease obligations of the kinds described in either of the preceding clauses (iii) and (iv); unless, in the case of any particular indebtedness, guarantee, lease, renewal, extension or refunding, the instrument or lease creating or evidencing the same or the assumption or guarantee of the same expressly provides that such indebtedness, lease, renewal, extension or refunding is not superior in right of payment to the Securities or the Guarantees, as the case may be.

“Significant Subsidiary” means any Subsidiary which would be a “significant subsidiary” as defined in Article 1, Rule 1-02 of Regulation S-X, promulgated pursuant to the Securities Act of 1933, as in effect on the date of this Indenture.

“Special Record Date” for the payment of any Defaulted Interest means a date fixed by the Trustee pursuant to Section 3.07.

“Stated Maturity” when used with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon means the date specified in such Security as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable.

“Subsidiary” means, with respect to any Person, any corporation more than 50% of the voting stock of which is owned directly or indirectly by such Person, and any partnership, association, joint venture or other entity in which such Person owns more than 50% of the equity interests or has the power to elect a majority of the board of directors or other governing body.

“Trading Day” shall mean, with respect to the Common Stock or a Marketable Security, so long as the common stock or such Marketable Security, as the case may be, is listed or admitted to trading on the Nasdaq, a day on which the Nasdaq is open for the transaction of business, or, if the Common Stock or such Marketable Security, as the case may be, is not listed or admitted to trading on the Nasdaq, a day on which the principal national securities exchange on which the Common Stock or such Marketable Security, as the case may be, is listed is open for the transaction of business, or, if the Common Stock or such Marketable Security, as the case may be, is not so listed or admitted for trading on any national securities exchange, a day on which the member of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority selected by the Company to provide pricing information for the Common Stock or such Marketable Security is open for the transaction of business.

“Trust Indenture Act” or “TIA” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as in force at the date as of which this instrument was executed; provided, however, that, in the event the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 is amended after such date, “Trust Indenture Act” or “TIA” means, to the extent required by any such amendment, the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 as so amended.

“Trustee” means the Person named as the Trustee in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Trustee” shall mean and include each Person who is then a Trustee hereunder. If at any time there is more than one such Person, “Trustee” as used with respect to the Securities of any series shall mean the Trustee with respect to Securities of that series.

“Vice President” when used with respect to the Company or the Trustee means any vice president, whether or not designated by a number or a word or words added before or after the title “vice president”, including without limitation, an assistant vice president.

“Voting Stock”, as applied to the stock of any corporation, means stock of any class or classes (however designated) having by the terms thereof ordinary voting power to elect a majority of the members of the board of directors (or other governing body) of such corporation other than stock having such power only by reason of the happening of a contingency.

“Yield to Maturity” means the yield to maturity on a series of Securities, calculated by the Company at the time of issuance of such series of Securities, or, if applicable, at the most recent redetermination of interest on such series, in accordance with accepted financial practice.

Section 1.02 Compliance Certificates and Opinions. Upon any application or request by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any provision of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee an Officers’ Certificate stating that all conditions precedent, if any (including any covenants compliance with which constitutes a condition precedent), provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel stating that in the opinion of such Counsel all such conditions precedent, if any (including any covenants compliance with which constitutes a condition precedent), have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or request as to which the furnishing of such documents is specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or request, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.

Every certificate or opinion with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant provided for in this Indenture (other than annual statements of compliance provided pursuant to Section 10.04) shall include: (1) a statement that each individual signing such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition and the definitions herein relating thereto; (2) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based; (3) a statement that, in the opinion of each such individual, he has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and (4) a statement as to whether, in the opinion of each such individual, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

Section 1.03            Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee. In any case where several matters are required to be certified by, or covered by an opinion of, any specified Person, it is not necessary that all such matters be certified by, or covered by the opinion of, only one such Person, or that they be so certified or covered by only one document, but one such Person may certify or give an opinion with respect to some matters and one or more other such Persons may certify or give an opinion as to the other matters, and any such Person may certify or give an opinion as to such matters in one or several documents.

Any certificate of an officer of the Company or Opinion of Counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, counsel, unless such officer knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the matters upon which his certificate or opinion is based are erroneous. Any such certificate or Opinion of Counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an officer or officers of the Company stating that the information with respect to such factual matters is in the possession of the Company, unless such counsel knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to such matters are erroneous.

Where any Person is required to make, give or execute two or more applications, requests, consents, certificates, statements, opinions or other instruments under this Indenture, they may, but need not, be consolidated and form one instrument.

Section 1.04            Acts of Securityholders.

(a)            Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be given or taken by Securityholders or Securityholders of any series may be embodied in and evidenced by one or more instruments of substantially similar tenor signed by such Securityholders in person or by an agent duly appointed in writing or may be embodied in or evidenced by an electronic transmission which identifies the documents containing the proposal on which such consent is requested and certifies such Securityholders' consent thereto and agreement to be bound thereby; and, except as herein otherwise expressly provided, such action shall become effective when such instrument or instruments are delivered to the Trustee, and, where it is hereby expressly required, to the Company. If any Securities are denominated in coin or currency other than that of the United States, then for the purposes of determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of Securities have taken any action as herein described, the principal amount of such Securities shall be deemed to be that amount of United States dollars that could be obtained for such principal amount on the basis of the spot rate of exchange into United States dollars for the currency in which such Securities are denominated (as evidenced to the Trustee by an Officers' Certificate) as of the date the taking of such action by the Holders of such requisite principal amount is evidenced to the Trustee as provided in the immediately preceding sentence. If any Securities are Original Issue Discount Securities, then for the purposes of determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of Securities have taken any action as herein described, the principal amount of such Original Issue Discount Securities shall be deemed to be the amount of the principal thereof that would be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof as of the date the taking of such action by the Holders of such requisite principal amount is evidenced to the Trustee as provided in the first sentence of this Section 1.04(a). Such instrument or instruments (and the action embodied therein and evidenced thereby) are herein sometimes referred to as the "Act" of the Securityholders signing such instrument or instruments. Proof of execution of any such instrument or of a writing appointing any such agent shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and (subject to Section 6.01) conclusive in favor of the Trustee and the Company, if made in the manner provided in this Section.

(b) The fact and date of the execution by any Person of any such instrument or writing may be proved by the affidavit of a witness to such execution or by the certificate of any notary public or other officer authorized by law to take acknowledgments of deeds, certifying that the individual signing such instrument or writing acknowledged to him the execution thereof. Where such execution is by an officer of a corporation or a member of a partnership, on behalf of such corporation or partnership, such certificate or affidavit shall also constitute sufficient proof of his authority. The fact and date of the execution of any such instrument or writing, or the authority of the person executing the same, may also be proved in any other manner which the Trustee deems sufficient.

(c) The ownership of Securities shall be proved by the Security Register.

(d) If the Company shall solicit from the Holders any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, the Company may, at its option, fix in advance a record date for the determination of Holders entitled to give such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, but the Company shall have no obligation to do so. Such record date shall be the later of 10 days prior to the first solicitation of such action or the date of the most recent list of Holders furnished to the Trustee pursuant to Section 7.01. If such a record date is fixed, such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action may be given before or after the record date, but only the Holders of record at the close of business on the record date shall be deemed to be Holders for the purposes of determining whether Holders of the requisite proportion of Securities outstanding have authorized or agreed or consented to such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, and for that purpose the Securities outstanding shall be computed as of the record date; provided that no such authorization, agreement or consent by the Holders on the record date shall be deemed effective unless it shall become effective pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture not later than six months after the record date, and that no such authorization, agreement or consent may be amended, withdrawn or revoked once given by a Holder, unless the Company shall provide for such amendment, withdrawal or revocation in conjunction with such solicitation of authorizations, agreements or consents or unless and to the extent required by applicable law.

(e) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action by the Holder of any Security shall bind the Holder of every Security issued upon the registration of transfer thereof or in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof, in respect of anything done or suffered to be done by the Trustee or the Company in reliance thereon whether or not notation of such action is made upon such Security.

Section 1.05 Notices, etc., to Trustee and Company. Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Securityholders or other document provided or permitted by this Indenture to be made upon, given or furnished to, or filed with:

(1) the Trustee by any Securityholder or by the Company shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished or filed in writing to or with the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office, Attention: Corporate Trust Administration; or

(2) the Company by the Trustee or by any Securityholder shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder (except as provided in Section 5.01(4) or, in the case of a request for repayment, as specified in the Security carrying the right to repayment) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to the Company addressed to it at the address of its principal office specified in the first paragraph of this instrument, Attention: Chief Financial Officer, or at the address last furnished in writing to the Trustee by the Company.

**Section 1.06**            **Notices to Securityholders; Waiver.** Where this Indenture or any Security provides for notice to Securityholders of any event, such notice shall be sufficiently given (unless otherwise herein or in such Security expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each Securityholder affected by such event, at his address as it appears in the Security Register, not later than the latest date, and not earlier than the earliest date, prescribed for the giving of such notice. In any case where notice to Securityholders is given by mail, neither the failure to mail such notice, nor any defect in any notice so mailed, to any particular Securityholder shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Securityholders. Where this Indenture or any Security provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the Person entitled to receive such notice, either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Securityholders shall be filed with the Trustee, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.

In case, by reason of the suspension of regular mail service as a result of a strike, work stoppage or otherwise, it shall be impractical to mail notice of any event to any Securityholder when such notice is required to be given pursuant to any provision of this Indenture, then any method of notification as shall be satisfactory to the Trustee and the Company shall be deemed to be a sufficient giving of such notice.

**Section 1.07**            **Conflict with Trust Indenture Act.** If and to the extent that any provision hereof limits, qualifies or conflicts with the duties imposed by, or with another provision (an “incorporated provision”) included in this Indenture by operation of, any of Sections 310 to 318, inclusive, of the Trust Indenture Act, such imposed duties or incorporated provision shall control.

**Section 1.08**            **Effect of Headings and Table of Contents.** The Article and Section headings herein and the Table of Contents are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

**Section 1.09**            **Successors and Assigns.** All covenants and agreements in this Indenture by the Company and the Guarantors, if any, shall bind their respective successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

**Section 1.10**            **Separability Clause.** In case any provision in this Indenture or in the Securities shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

**Section 1.11**            **Benefits of Indenture.** Nothing in this Indenture or in any Securities, express or implied, shall give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and their successors hereunder, any Authenticating Agent or Paying Agent, the Security Registrar and the Holders of Securities (or such of them as may be affected thereby), any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture.

**Section 1.12**            **Governing Law.** This Indenture shall be construed in accordance with and governed by the laws of the State of New York.

**Section 1.13**            **Counterparts.** This instrument may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

**Section 1.14**            **Judgment Currency.** The Company agrees, to the fullest extent that it may effectively do so under applicable law, that (a) if for the purpose of obtaining judgment in any court it is necessary to convert the sum due in respect of the principal of, or premium or interest, if any, on the Securities of any series (the “Required Currency”) into a currency in which a judgment will be rendered (the “Judgment Currency”), the rate of exchange used shall be the rate at which in accordance with normal banking procedures the Trustee could purchase in the City of New York the Required Currency with the Judgment Currency on the New York Banking Day preceding that on which a final unappealable judgment is given and (b) its obligations under this Indenture to make payments in the Required Currency (i) shall not be discharged or satisfied by any tender, or any recovery pursuant to any judgment (whether or not entered in accordance with subsection (a)), in any currency other than the Required Currency, except to the extent that such tender or recovery shall result in the actual receipt, by the payee, of the full amount of the Required Currency expressed to be payable in respect of such payments, (ii) shall be enforceable as an alternative or additional cause of action for the purpose of recovering in the Required Currency the amount, if any, by which such actual receipt shall fall short of the full amount of the Required Currency so expressed to be payable and (iii) shall not be affected by judgment being obtained for any other sum due under this Indenture. For purposes of the foregoing, “New York Banking Day” means any day except a Saturday, Sunday or a legal holiday in the City of New York or a day on which banking institutions in the City of New York are authorized or required by law or executive order to close.

Section 1.15      Legal Holidays. In any case where any Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, date established for payment of Defaulted Interest pursuant to Section 3.07, Stated Maturity or Maturity with respect to any Security or other day on which principal or interest is due, shall not be a Business Day, then (notwithstanding any other provision of this Indenture or any Security) payment of principal or interest need not be made on such date, but may be made on the next succeeding Business Day with the same force and effect as if made on the Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, date established for payment of Defaulted Interest pursuant to Section 3.07 or Stated Maturity or Maturity; provided that no interest shall accrue for the period from and after such Interest Payment Date or other such day, Redemption Date, date established for payment of Defaulted Interest pursuant to Section 3.07, Stated Maturity or Maturity, as the case may be, to the next succeeding Business Day.

Section 1.16      Agent for Service; Submission to Jurisdiction; Waiver of Immunities and Jury Trial. The Company and each Guarantor agree that any suit, action or proceeding against the Company or any Guarantor arising out of or based upon this Indenture or the transactions contemplated hereby may be instituted in any State or Federal court in The City of New York, New York, and waives any objection which it may now or hereafter have to the laying of venue of any such proceeding, and irrevocably submits to the nonexclusive jurisdiction of such courts in any suit, action or proceeding. The Company and each Guarantor shall maintain in the Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York an office or agency to act as its authorized agent (the "Authorized Agent") upon whom process may be served in any suit, action or proceeding arising out of or based upon this Indenture, any Security or the transactions contemplated herein or thereby which may be instituted in any State or Federal court in The City of New York, New York, and expressly accepts the nonexclusive jurisdiction of any such court in respect of any such suit, action or proceeding. The Company shall give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the location, and of any change in the location, of such office or agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain such office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee. The Company hereby designates the Corporate Trust Office as the Authorized Agent and appoints the Trustee its agent to receive all such process so long as such Corporate Trust Office remains the Authorized Agent. The Company and each Guarantor further agree to take any and all action as may be necessary to maintain such designation and appointment of such agent in full force and effect for a period of ten years from the date of this Indenture. If for any reason the Authorized Agent shall cease to be available to act as such authorized agent for the Company and any Guarantor, the Company and each Guarantor agree to designate a new agent in the State of New York on the terms and for the purpose of this Section 1.16. The Company and each Guarantor hereby represent and warrant that the Authorized Agent has accepted such appointment and has agreed to act as said agent for service of process, and the Company and each Guarantor agree to take any and all action, including the filing of any and all documents that may be necessary to continue such appointment in full force and effect as aforesaid. Service of process upon the Authorized Agent shall be deemed, in every respect, effective service of process upon the Company.

ARTICLE II  
SECURITY FORMS

Section 2.01           Forms Generally. The Securities shall have such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by this Indenture and may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification and such legends or endorsements placed thereon, as may be required to comply with the rules of any securities exchange, or as may, consistently herewith, be determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of the Securities. Any portion of the text of any Security may be set forth on the reverse thereof, with an appropriate reference thereto on the face of the Security.

The definitive Securities shall be printed, lithographed or engraved or produced by any combination of these methods on steel engraved borders or may be produced in any other manner, all as determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities, subject, with respect to the Securities of any series, to the rules of any securities exchange on which such Securities are listed.

Section 2.02           Forms of Securities. Each Security shall be in one of the forms approved from time to time by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto.

Prior to the delivery of a Security to the Trustee for authentication in any form approved by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, the Company shall deliver to the Trustee the Board Resolution by or pursuant to which such form of Security has been approved, which Board Resolution shall have attached thereto a true and correct copy of the form of Security which has been approved thereby or, if a Board Resolution authorizes a specific officer or officers to approve a form of Security, a certificate of such officer or officers approving the form of Security attached thereto. Any form of Security approved by or pursuant to a Board Resolution must be acceptable as to form to the Trustee, such acceptance to be evidenced by the Trustee's authentication of Securities in that form or a certificate signed by a Responsible Officer of the Trustee and delivered to the Company.

Section 2.03           Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication. The form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication for any Security issued pursuant to this Indenture shall be substantially as follows:

TRUSTEE'S CERTIFICATE OF AUTHENTICATION

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

[TRUSTEE]

By \_\_\_\_\_

Authorized Signatory

Dated \_\_\_\_\_

(a) If the Company shall establish pursuant to Sections 2.02 and 3.01 that the Securities of a particular series are to be issued in whole or in part in the form of one or more Global Securities, then the Company shall execute and the Trustee or its agent shall, in accordance with Section 3.03 and the Company Order delivered to the Trustee or its agent thereunder, authenticate and deliver, such Global Security or Securities, which (i) shall represent, and shall be denominated in an amount equal to the aggregate principal amount of, the Outstanding Securities of such series to be represented by such Global Security or Securities, or such portion thereof as the Company shall specify in a Company Order, (ii) shall be registered in the name of the Depository for such Global Security or Securities or its nominee, (iii) shall be delivered by the Trustee or its agent to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository's instruction and (iv) shall bear a legend substantially to the following effect: "Unless this certificate is presented by an authorized representative of the Depository to Issuer or its agent for registration of transfer, exchange, or payment, and any certificate issued is registered in the name of the nominee of the Depository or in such other name as is requested by an authorized representative of the Depository (and any payment is made to the nominee of the Depository or to such other entity as is requested by an authorized representative of the Depository), ANY TRANSFER, PLEDGE, OR OTHER USE HEREOF FOR VALUE OR OTHERWISE BY OR TO ANY PERSON IS WRONGFUL inasmuch as the registered owner hereof, the nominee of the Depository, has an interest herein."

(b) Notwithstanding any other provision of this Section 2.04 or of Section 3.05, and subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) below, unless the terms of a Global Security expressly permit such Global Security to be exchanged in whole or in part for individual Securities, a Global Security may be transferred, in whole but not in part and in the manner provided in Section 3.05, only to a nominee of the Depository for such Global Security, or to the Depository, or a successor Depository for such Global Security selected or approved by the Company, or to a nominee of such successor Depository.

(c) (i) If at any time the Depository for a Global Security notifies the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depository for such Global Security or if at any time the Depository for the Securities for such series shall no longer be eligible or in good standing under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or other applicable statute or regulation, the Company shall appoint a successor Depository with respect to such Global Security. If a successor Depository for such Global Security is not appointed by the Company within 90 days after the Company receives such notice or becomes aware of such ineligibility, the Company will execute, and the Trustee or its agent, upon receipt of a Company Request for the authentication and delivery of individual Securities of such series in exchange for such Global Security, will authenticate and deliver, individual Securities of such series of like tenor and terms in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security in exchange for such Global Security.

(ii) The Company may at any time and in its sole discretion determine that the Securities of any series or portion thereof issued or issuable in the form of one or more Global Securities shall no longer be represented by such Global Security or Securities. In such event the Company will execute, and the Trustee, upon receipt of a Company Request for the authentication and delivery of individual Securities of such series in exchange in whole or in part for such Global Security, will authenticate and deliver individual Securities of such series of like tenor and terms in definitive form in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of such Global Security or Securities representing such series or portion thereof in exchange for such Global Security or Securities.

(iii) If specified by the Company pursuant to Sections 2.02 and 3.02 with respect to Securities issued or issuable in the form of a Global Security, the Depository for such Global Security may surrender such Global Security in exchange in whole or in part for individual Securities of such series of like tenor and terms in definitive form on such terms as are acceptable to the Company and such Depository. Thereupon the Company shall execute, and the Trustee or its agent shall authenticate and deliver, without service charge, (1) to each Person specified by such Depository a new Security or Securities of the same series of like tenor and terms and of any authorized denomination as requested by such Person in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for such Person's beneficial interest as specified by such Depository in the Global Security; and (2) to such Depository a new Global Security of like tenor and terms and in an authorized denomination equal to the difference, if any, between the principal amount of the surrendered Global Security and the aggregate principal amount of Securities delivered to Holders thereof.

(iv) In any exchange provided for in any of the preceding three paragraphs, the Company will execute and the Trustee or its agent will authenticate and deliver individual Securities in definitive registered form in authorized denominations. Upon the exchange of the entire principal amount of a Global Security for individual Securities, such Global Security shall be canceled by the Trustee or its agent. Except as provided in the preceding paragraph, Securities issued in exchange for a Global Security pursuant to this Section shall be registered in such names and in such authorized denominations as the Depository for such Global Security, pursuant to instructions from its direct or indirect participants or otherwise, shall instruct the Trustee or the Security Registrar. The Trustee or the Security Registrar shall deliver at its Corporate Trust Office such Securities to the Persons in whose names such Securities are so registered.

### ARTICLE III THE SECURITIES

Section 3.01 General Title; General Limitations; Issuable in Series; Terms of Particular Series. The aggregate principal amount of Securities which may be authenticated and delivered and Outstanding under this Indenture is not limited.

The Securities may be issued in one or more series as from time to time may be authorized by the Board of Directors. There shall be established in or pursuant to a Board Resolution or in an indenture supplemental hereto, subject to Section 3.12, prior to the issuance of Securities of any such series:

- (1) the title of the Securities of such series (which shall distinguish the Securities of such series from Securities of any other series);
- (2) the Person to whom any interest on a Security of such series shall be payable, if other than the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest;
- (3) the date or dates on which the principal of the Securities of such series is payable;

- (4) the rate or rates (or manner of calculation thereof) at which the Securities of such series shall bear interest, if any, the date or dates from which such interest shall accrue, the Interest Payment Dates on which any such interest shall be payable and the Regular Record Date for any interest payable on any Interest Payment Date;
- (5) the place or places where the principal of and any premium and interest on Securities of such series shall be payable;
- (6) the period or periods within which, the Redemption Price or Prices or the Repayment Price or Prices, as the case may be, at which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of such series may be redeemed or repaid (including the applicability of Section 11.09), as the case may be, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company or the Holder;
- (7) the obligation, if any, of the Company to purchase Securities of such series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provisions or at the option of a Holder thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of such series shall be purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;
- (8) if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof, the denominations in which Securities of such series shall be issuable;
- (9) provisions, if any, with regard to the conversion or exchange of the Securities of such series, at the option of the Holders thereof or the Company, as the case may be, for or into new Securities of a different series or other securities;
- (10) if other than U.S. dollars, the currency or currencies or units based on or related to currencies in which the Securities of such series shall be denominated and in which payments of principal of, and any premium and interest on, such Securities shall or may be payable;
- (11) if the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of such series are to be payable, at the election of the Company or a Holder thereof, in a coin or currency (including a composite currency) other than that in which the Securities are stated to be payable, the period or periods within which, and the terms and conditions upon which, such election may be made;
- (12) if the amount of payments of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of such series may be determined with reference to an index based on a coin or currency (including a composite currency) other than that in which the Securities are stated to be payable, the manner in which such amounts shall be determined;
- (13) any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of such series pursuant to Sections 3.04, 3.05, 3.06, 9.06 and 11.07 and except for any Securities which, pursuant to Section 3.03, are deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder);

(14) provisions, if any, with regard to the exchange of Securities of such series, at the option of the Holders thereof, for other Securities of the same series of the same aggregate principal amount or of a different authorized series or different authorized denomination or denominations, or both;

(15) provisions, if any, with regard to the appointment by the Company of an Authenticating Agent in one or more places other than the location of the office of the Trustee with power to act on behalf of the Trustee and subject to its direction in the authentication and delivery of the Securities of any one or more series in connection with such transactions as shall be specified in the provisions of this Indenture or in or pursuant to such Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto;

(16) the portion of the principal amount of Securities of the series, if other than the principal amount thereof, which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 5.02 or provable in bankruptcy pursuant to Section 5.04;

(17) any Event of Default with respect to the Securities of such series, if not set forth herein, and any additions, deletions or other changes to the Events of Default set forth herein that shall be applicable to the Securities of such series;

(18) any covenant solely for the benefit of the Securities of such series and any additions, deletions or other changes to the provisions of Article VIII, Article X or Section 1.01 or any definitions relating to such Article that would otherwise be applicable to the Securities of such series;

(19) if Section 4.03 of this Indenture shall not be applicable to the Securities of such series and if Section 4.03 shall be applicable to any covenant or Event of Default established in or pursuant to a Board Resolution or in an indenture supplemental hereto as described above that has not already been established herein;

(20) any amendments or modifications to the subordination provisions in Article XII;

(21) if the Securities of such series shall be issued in whole or in part in the form of a Global Security or Securities, the terms and conditions, if any, upon which such Global Security or Securities may be exchanged in whole or in part for other individual Securities; and the Depository for such Global Security or Securities;

(22) if the Securities of such series shall be guaranteed, the terms and conditions of such Guarantees and provisions for the accession of the guarantors to certain obligations hereunder; and

(23) any other terms of such series, including, without limitations, any restrictions on transfer related thereto.

All upon such terms as may be determined in or pursuant to such Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto with respect to such series. The form of the Securities of each series shall be established pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture in or pursuant to the Board Resolution or in the indenture supplemental hereto creating such series. The Securities of each series shall be distinguished from the Securities of each other series in such manner, reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, as the Board of Directors may determine.

Unless otherwise provided with respect to Securities of a particular series, the Securities of any series may only be issuable in registered form, without coupons.

Any terms or provisions in respect of the Securities of any series issued under this Indenture may be determined pursuant to this Section by providing for the method by which such terms or provisions shall be determined.

Section 3.02 Denominations. The Securities of each series shall be issuable in such denominations and currency as shall be provided in the provisions of this Indenture or in or pursuant to the Board Resolution or the indenture supplemental hereto creating such series. In the absence of any such provisions with respect to the Securities of any series, the Securities of that series shall be issuable only in fully registered form in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof.

Section 3.03 Execution, Authentication and Delivery and Dating. The Securities shall be executed on behalf of the Company by any Responsible Officer. The signature of any of these officers on the Securities may be manual or facsimile. Securities bearing the manual or facsimile signatures of individuals who were at any time the proper officers of the Company shall bind the Company, notwithstanding that such individuals or any of them have ceased to hold such offices prior to the authentication and delivery of such Securities or did not hold such offices at the date of such Securities.

At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities executed by the Company to the Trustee for authentication; and the Trustee shall, upon Company Order, authenticate and deliver such Securities as in this Indenture provided and not otherwise.

Prior to any such authentication and delivery, the Trustee shall be provided with the Officers' Certificate required to be furnished to the Trustee pursuant to Section 1.02, and the Board Resolution and any certificate relating to the issuance of the series of Securities required to be furnished pursuant to Section 2.02, an Opinion of Counsel substantially to the effect that:

- (1) all instruments furnished to the Trustee conform to the requirements of the Indenture and constitute sufficient authority hereunder for the Trustee to authenticate and deliver such Securities;
- (2) the form and terms of such Securities have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture;
- (3) all laws and requirements with respect to the execution and delivery by the Company of such Securities have been complied with, the Company has the corporate power to issue such Securities and such Securities have been duly authorized and delivered by the Company and, assuming due authentication and delivery by the Trustee, constitute legal, valid and binding obligations of the Company enforceable in accordance with their terms (subject, as to enforcement of remedies, to applicable bankruptcy, reorganization, insolvency, moratorium or other laws and legal principles affecting creditors' rights generally from time to time in effect and to general equitable principles, whether applied in an action at law or in equity) and entitled to the benefits of this Indenture, equally and ratably with all other Securities, if any, of such series Outstanding;

(4) when applicable, the Indenture is qualified under the Trust Indenture Act; and

(5) such other matters as the Trustee may reasonably request; and, if the authentication and delivery relates to a new series of Securities created by an indenture supplemental hereto, also stating that all laws and requirements with respect to the form and execution by the Company of the supplemental indenture with respect to that series of Securities have been complied with, the Company has corporate power to execute and deliver any such supplemental indenture and has taken all necessary corporate action for those purposes and any such supplemental indenture has been duly executed and delivered and constitutes the legal, valid and binding obligation of the Company enforceable in accordance with its terms (subject, as to enforcement of remedies, to applicable bankruptcy, reorganization, insolvency, moratorium or other laws and legal principles affecting creditors' rights generally from time to time in effect and to general equitable principles, whether applied in an action at law or in equity).

The Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue thereof will adversely affect the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture.

Unless otherwise provided in the form of Security for any series, all Securities shall be dated the date of their authentication.

No Security shall be entitled to any benefit under this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose unless there appears on such Security a certificate of authentication substantially in the form provided for herein executed by the Trustee by manual or facsimile signature, and such certificate upon any Security shall be conclusive evidence, and the only evidence, that such Security has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if any Security shall have been authenticated and delivered hereunder but never issued and sold by the Company, and the Company shall deliver such Security to the Trustee for cancellation as provided in Section 3.09, for all purposes of this Indenture such Security shall be deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder and shall never be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture.

Section 3.04 Temporary Securities. Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and, upon receipt of the documents required by Section 3.03, together with a Company Order, the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities which are printed, lithographed, typewritten or otherwise produced, in any authorized denomination, substantially of the tenor of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued and with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as the officers executing such Securities may determine, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

If temporary Securities of any series are issued, the Company will cause definitive Securities of such series to be prepared without unreasonable delay. After the preparation of definitive Securities, the temporary Securities of such series shall be exchangeable for definitive Securities of such series upon surrender of the temporary Securities of such series at the office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment, without charge to the Holder; and upon surrender for cancellation of any one or more temporary Securities the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a like principal amount of definitive Securities of such series of authorized denominations and of like tenor and terms. Until so exchanged the temporary Securities of such series shall in all respects be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series.

Section 3.05 Registration, Transfer and Exchange. The Company shall keep or cause to be kept a register or registers (herein sometimes referred to as the "Security Register") in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall provide for the registration of Securities, or of Securities of a particular series, and of transfers of Securities or of Securities of such series. Any such register shall be in written form or in any other form capable of being converted into written form within a reasonable time. At all reasonable times the information contained in such register or registers shall be available for inspection by the Trustee at the office or agency to be maintained by the Company as provided in Section 10.02. There shall be only one Security Register per series of Securities.

Subject to Section 2.04, upon surrender for registration of transfer of any Security of any series at the office or agency of the Company maintained for such purpose in a Place of Payment, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in the name of the designated transferee or transferees, one or more new Securities of such series of any authorized denominations, of a like aggregate principal amount and Stated Maturity and of like tenor and terms.

Subject to Section 2.04, at the option of the Holder, Securities of any series may be exchanged for other Securities of such series of any authorized denominations, of a like aggregate principal amount and Stated Maturity and of like tenor and terms, upon surrender of the Securities to be exchanged at such office or agency. Whenever any Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Securities which the Securityholder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

All Securities issued upon any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities shall be the valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same debt, and entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture, as the Securities surrendered upon such registration of transfer or exchange.

Every Security presented or surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange shall (if so required by the Company or the Trustee) be duly endorsed, or be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustee duly executed, by the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing.

Unless otherwise provided in the Security to be registered for transfer or exchanged, no service charge shall be made on any Securityholder for any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, but the Company may (unless otherwise provided in such Security) require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 3.04, 9.06 or 11.07 not involving any transfer.

The Company shall not be required (i) to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Security of any series during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the mailing of a notice of redemption of Securities of such series selected for redemption under Section 11.03 and ending at the close of business on the date of such mailing, or (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any Security so selected for redemption in whole or in part.

Section 3.06 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities. If (i) any mutilated Security is surrendered to the Trustee, or the Company and the Trustee receive evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security, and (ii) there is delivered to the Company and the Trustee such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them harmless, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustee that such Security has been acquired by a protected purchaser, the Company shall execute and upon its written request the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in exchange for or in lieu of any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security, a new Security of like tenor, series, Stated Maturity and principal amount, bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

In case any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security has become or is about to become due and payable, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, pay such Security.

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

Every new Security issued pursuant to this Section in lieu of any destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall constitute an original additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of the same series duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities.

Section 3.07            Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved. Unless otherwise provided with respect to such Security pursuant to Section 3.01, interest on any Security which is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date shall be paid to the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest.

Any interest on any Security which is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date (herein called "Defaulted Interest") shall forthwith cease to be payable to the registered Holder on the relevant Regular Record Date by virtue of his having been such Holder; and, except as hereinafter provided, such Defaulted Interest may be paid by the Company, at its election in each case, as provided in clause (1) or clause (2) below:

(1)            The Company may elect to make payment of any Defaulted Interest to the Persons in whose names any such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a special record date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner (the "Special Record Date"). The Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each such Security and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause (1) provided. Thereupon the Trustee shall fix a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall be not more than 15 nor less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company of such Special Record Date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor to be mailed, first class postage prepaid, to the Holder of each such Security at his address as it appears in the Security Register, not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor having been mailed as aforesaid, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered on such Special Record Date and shall no longer be payable pursuant to the following clause (2).

(2)            The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause (2), such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

If any installment of interest the Stated Maturity of which is on or prior to the Redemption Date for any Security called for redemption pursuant to Article XI is not paid or duly provided for on or prior to the Redemption Date in accordance with the foregoing provisions of this Section, such interest shall be payable as part of the Redemption Price of such Securities.

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section, each Security delivered under this Indenture upon registration of transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, which were carried by such other Security.

**Section 3.08**            **Persons Deemed Owners.** The Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee may treat the Person in whose name any Security is registered as the owner of such Security for the purpose of receiving payment of principal of (and premium, if any), and (subject to Section 3.07) interest on, such Security and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not such Security be overdue, and neither the Company, the Trustee nor any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

**Section 3.09**            **Cancellation.** All Securities surrendered for payment, redemption, registration of transfer, exchange or credit against a sinking fund shall, if surrendered to any Person other than the Trustee, be delivered to the Trustee and, if not already canceled, shall be promptly canceled by it. The Company may at any time deliver to the Trustee for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated and delivered hereunder which the Company may have acquired in any manner whatsoever, and all Securities so delivered shall be promptly canceled by the Trustee. No Security shall be authenticated in lieu of or in exchange for any Securities canceled as provided in this Section, except as expressly permitted by this Indenture. The Trustee shall dispose of all canceled Securities in accordance with its standard procedures and deliver a certificate of such disposition to the Company upon its written request therefor.

**Section 3.10**            **CUSIP and CINS Numbers.** The Company in issuing any Securities may use “CUSIP” and “CINS” numbers (if then generally in use) and, if so, the Trustee shall use “CUSIP” and “CINS” numbers in notices of redemption as a convenience to Securityholders; provided that any such notice may state that no representation is made as to the correctness of such numbers either as printed on such Securities or as contained in any notice of a redemption and that reliance may be placed only on the other identification numbers printed on such Securities, and any such redemption shall not be affected by any defect in or omission of such numbers in such notices of redemption.

**Section 3.11**            **Computation of Interest.** Unless otherwise provided as contemplated in Section 3.01, interest on the Securities shall be calculated on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

**Section 3.12**            **Delayed Issuance of Securities.** Notwithstanding any contrary provision herein, if all Securities of a series are not to be originally issued at one time, it shall not be necessary for the Company to deliver to the Trustee an Officers’ Certificate, Board Resolution, indenture supplemental hereto, Opinion of Counsel or Company Order otherwise required pursuant to Sections 1.02, 2.02, 3.01 and 3.03 at or prior to the time of authentication of each Security of such series if such documents are delivered to the Trustee or its agent at or prior to the authentication upon original issuance of the first Security of such series to be issued; provided that any subsequent request by the Company to the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series upon original issuance shall constitute a representation and warranty by the Company that as of the date of such request, the statements made in the Officers’ Certificate or other certificates delivered pursuant to Sections 1.02 and 2.02 shall be true and correct as if made on such date.

A Company Order, Officers' Certificate or Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto delivered by the Company to the Trustee in the circumstances set forth in the preceding paragraph may provide that Securities which are the subject thereof will be authenticated and delivered by the Trustee or its agent on original issue from time to time in the aggregate principal amount, if any, established for such series pursuant to such procedures reasonably acceptable to the Trustee as may be specified from time to time by Company Order upon the telephonic, electronic or written order of Persons designated in such Company Order, Officers' Certificate, indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution (any such telephonic or electronic instructions to be promptly confirmed in writing by such Persons) and that such Persons are authorized to determine, consistent with such Company Order, Officers' Certificate, indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution, such terms and conditions of said Securities as are specified in such Company Order, Officers' Certificate, indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution.

#### ARTICLE IV SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE; DEFEASANCE

Section 4.01 Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture. Unless pursuant to Section 3.01 provision is made that this Section shall not be applicable to the Securities of any series, this Indenture shall cease to be of further effect with respect to any series of Securities (except as to any surviving rights of registration of transfer or exchange of Securities of such series expressly provided for herein or in the form of Security for such series), and the Trustee, on receipt of a Company Request and at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture as to such series, when:

(1) either

(A) all Securities of that series theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than (i) Securities of such series which have been destroyed, lost or stolen and which have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 3.06, and (ii) Securities of such series for whose payment money in the Required Currency has theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereafter repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 10.03) have been delivered to the Trustee canceled or for cancellation; or

(B) all such Securities of that series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee canceled or for cancellation:

(i) have become due and payable, or

(ii) will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year, or

(iii) are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustee in the name, and at the expense, of the Company, and the Company, in the case of (i), (ii) or (iii) above, has irrevocably deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust for the purpose an amount in the Required Currency sufficient to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee canceled or for cancellation, for principal (and premium, if any) and interest to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable), or to the Stated Maturity or Redemption Date, as the case may be;

(2) the Company has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company with respect to the Securities of such series; and

(3) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series have been complied with.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to any series of Securities, the obligations of the Company to the Trustee with respect to that series under Section 6.07 shall survive and the obligations of the Company and the Trustee under Sections 3.05, 3.06, 4.02, 10.02 and 10.03 shall survive such satisfaction and discharge.

**Section 4.02** Application of Trust Money. Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 10.03, all money, property and securities deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 4.01 or Section 4.03 shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the series of Securities in respect of which it was deposited and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of the principal (and premium, if any) and interest for whose payment such money has been deposited with the Trustee; but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

Anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any money, property or securities deposited with and held by it as provided in Section 4.03 and this Section 4.02 which, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, are in excess of the amount thereof which would then be required to be deposited to effect an equivalent satisfaction and discharge, Discharge (as defined below) or covenant defeasance, provided that the Trustee shall not be required to liquidate any securities in order to comply with the provisions of this paragraph.

**Section 4.03** Defeasance Upon Deposit of Funds or Government Obligations. Unless pursuant to Section 3.01 provision is made that this Section shall not be applicable to the Securities of any series, at the Company's option, either (a) the Company and the Guarantors, if any, shall be deemed to have been Discharged (as defined below) from its obligations with respect to any series of Securities after the applicable conditions set forth below have been satisfied or (b) the Company shall cease to be under any obligation to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth in Section 10.05 and Article VIII (and any other Sections or covenants applicable to such Securities that are determined pursuant to Section 3.01 to be subject to this provision), the Guarantors, if any, shall be released from the Guarantees and clause (4) of Section 5.01 of this Indenture (and any other Events of Default applicable to such Securities that are determined pursuant to Section 3.01 to be subject to this provision) shall be deemed not to be an Event of Default with respect to any series of Securities at any time after the applicable conditions set forth below have been satisfied:

(1) the Company shall have deposited or caused to be deposited irrevocably with the Trustee as trust funds, specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of such series, (i) money in an amount, or (ii) the equivalent in securities of the government which issued the currency in which the Securities are denominated or government agencies backed by the full faith and credit of such government which through the payment of interest and principal in respect thereof in accordance with their terms will provide freely available funds on or prior to the due date of any payment, money in an amount, or (iii) a combination of (i) and (ii), sufficient, in the opinion (with respect to (ii) and (iii)) of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay and discharge each installment of principal (including mandatory sinking fund payments) and any premium of, interest on and any repurchase or redemption obligations with respect to the outstanding Securities of such series on the dates such installments of interest or principal or repurchase or redemption obligations are due (before such a deposit, if the Securities of such series are then redeemable or may be redeemed in the future pursuant to the terms thereof, in either case at the option of the Company, the Company may give to the Trustee, in accordance with Section 11.02, a notice of its election to redeem all of the Securities of such series at a future date in accordance with Article XI);

(2) no Event of Default or event (including such deposit) which with notice or lapse of time would become an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of such series shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit (other than an Event of Default resulting from the borrowing of funds to be applied to such deposit);

(3) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that Holders of the Securities of such series will not recognize income, gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of the Company's exercise of its option under this Section 4.03 and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amount and in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such option had not been exercised, and, in the case of Securities being Discharged, accompanied by a ruling to that effect from the Internal Revenue Service, unless, as set forth in such Opinion of Counsel, there has been a change in the applicable Federal income tax law since the date of this Indenture such that a ruling from the Internal Revenue Service is no longer required;

(4) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate stating that the deposit referred to in paragraph (1) above was not made by the Company with the intent of preferring the Holders over other creditors of the Company or with the intent of defeating, hindering, delaying or defrauding creditors of the Company or others; and

(5) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series have been complied with.

If the Company, at its option, with respect to a series of Securities, satisfies the applicable conditions pursuant to either clause (a) or (b) of the first sentence of this Section, then (A), in the event the Company satisfies the conditions to clause (a) and elects clause (a) to be applicable, each of the Guarantors, if any, shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by, and obligations under, its respective guarantee of the Securities of such series and to have satisfied all the obligations under this Indenture relating to the Securities of such series and (B) in either case, each of the Guarantors, if any, shall cease to be under any obligation to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth in any covenants applicable to such Securities that are determined pursuant to Section 3.01 to be subject to this provision, and any Events of Default applicable to such series of Securities that are determined pursuant to Section 3.01 to be subject to this provision shall be deemed not to be an Event of Default with respect to such series of Securities at any time thereafter.

Section 4.04 Reinstatement. If the Trustee or Paying Agent is unable to apply any money, property or securities in accordance with Section 4.02 of this Indenture, by reason of any legal proceeding or by reason of any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, the Company's and, if applicable, the Guarantors' obligations under this Indenture and the Securities shall be revived and reinstated as though no deposit had occurred pursuant to Section 4.01 or 4.03 of this Indenture, as the case may be, until such time as the Trustee or Paying Agent is permitted to apply all such money, property or securities in accordance with Section 4.02 of this Indenture; provided that, if the Company has made any payment of principal of or interest on any Securities because of the reinstatement of its obligations, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights of the Holders of such Securities to receive such payment from the money, property or securities held by the Trustee or Paying Agent.

## ARTICLE V REMEDIES

Section 5.01 Events of Default. "Event of Default", wherever used herein, means with respect to any series of Securities any one of the following events (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body), unless such event is either inapplicable to a particular series or it is specifically deleted or modified in or pursuant to the indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution creating such series of Securities or in the form of Security for such series:

- (1) default in the payment of any interest upon any Security of that series when it becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days; or
- (2) default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security of that series at its Maturity; or
- (3) default in the payment of any sinking or purchase fund or analogous obligation when the same becomes due by the terms of the Securities of such series; or
- (4) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant or warranty of the Company in this Indenture in respect of the Securities of such series (other than a covenant or warranty in respect of the Securities of such series a default in the performance of which or the breach of which is elsewhere in this Section specifically dealt with), all of such covenants and warranties in the Indenture which are not expressly stated to be for the benefit of a particular series of Securities being deemed in respect of the Securities of all series for this purpose, and continuance of such default or breach for a period of 90 days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Company by the Trustee or to the Company and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 33-1/3% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series, a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a "Notice of Default" hereunder; or
- (5) the entry of an order for relief against the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof under Title 11, United States Code (the "Federal Bankruptcy Act") by a court having jurisdiction in the premises or a decree or order by a court having jurisdiction in the premises adjudging the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof a bankrupt or insolvent under any other applicable Federal or State law, or the entry of a decree or order approving as properly filed a petition seeking reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition of or in respect of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof under the Federal Bankruptcy Act or any other applicable Federal or State law, or appointing a receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or other similar official) of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof or of any substantial part of its property, or ordering the winding up or liquidation of its affairs, and the continuance of any such decree or order unstayed and in effect for a period of 90 consecutive days; or

(6) the consent by the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof to the institution of bankruptcy or insolvency proceedings against it, or the filing by it of a petition or answer or consent seeking reorganization or relief under the Federal Bankruptcy Act or any other applicable Federal or State law, or the consent by it to the filing of any such petition or to the appointment of a receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or other similar official) of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof or of any substantial part of its property, or the making by it of an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or the admission by it in writing of its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due, or the taking of corporate action by the Company or any Significant Subsidiary thereof in furtherance of any such action; or

(7) any other Event of Default provided in the indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution under which such series of Securities is issued or in the form of Security for such series.

Section 5.02 Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment. If an Event of Default described in paragraph (1), (2), (3), (4) or (7) (if the Event of Default under clause (4) or (7) is with respect to less than all series of Securities then Outstanding) of Section 5.01 occurs and is continuing with respect to any series, then and in each and every such case, unless the principal of all the Securities of such series shall have already become due and payable, either the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 33-1/3% in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series then Outstanding hereunder (each such series acting as a separate class), by notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by Holders), may declare the principal amount (or, if the Securities of such series are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount as may be specified in the terms of that series) of all the Securities of such series and all accrued interest thereon to be due and payable immediately, and upon any such declaration the same shall become and shall be immediately due and payable, anything in this Indenture or in the Securities of such series contained to the contrary notwithstanding. If an Event of Default described in clause (4) or (7) (if the Event of Default under clause (4) or (7) is with respect to all series of Securities then Outstanding), of Section 5.01 occurs and is continuing, then and in each and every such case, unless the principal of all the Securities shall have already become due and payable, either the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 3 3-1/3% in aggregate principal amount of all the Securities then Outstanding hereunder (treated as one class), by notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by Holders), may declare the principal amount (or, if any Securities are Original Issue Discount Securities, such portion of the principal amount as may be specified in the terms thereof) of all the Securities then Outstanding and all accrued interest thereon to be due and payable immediately, and upon any such declaration the same shall become and shall be immediately due and payable, anything in this Indenture or in the Securities contained to the contrary notwithstanding. If an Event of Default of the type set forth in clause (5) or (6) of Section 5.01 occurs and is continuing, the principal of and any interest on the Securities then Outstanding shall become immediately due and payable.

At any time after such a declaration of acceleration has been made with respect to the Securities of any or all series, as the case may be, and before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained by the Trustee as hereinafter in this Article provided, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if:

- (1) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay:
- (A) all overdue installments of interest on the Securities of such series; and
  - (B) the principal of (and premium, if any, on) any Securities of such series which have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration, and interest thereon at the rate or rates prescribed therefor by the terms of the Securities of such series, to the extent that payment of such interest is lawful; and
  - (C) interest upon overdue installments of interest at the rate or rates prescribed therefor by the terms of the Securities of such series to the extent that payment of such interest is lawful; and
  - (D) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustee hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel and all other amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.07; and

(2) all Events of Default with respect to such series of Securities, other than the nonpayment of the principal of the Securities of such series which have become due solely by such acceleration, have been cured or waived as provided in Section 5.13. No such rescission shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

Section 5.03 Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee. The Company covenants that if:

- (1) default is made in the payment of any installment of interest on any Security of any series when such interest becomes due and payable; or
- (2) default is made in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security at the Maturity thereof; or
- (3) default is made in the payment of any sinking or purchase fund or analogous obligation when the same becomes due by the terms of the Securities of any series; and any such default continues for any period of grace provided with respect to the Securities of such series, the Company will, upon demand of the Trustee, pay to it, for the benefit of the Holder of any such Security (or the Holders of any such series in the case of clause (3) above), the whole amount then due and payable on any such Security (or on the Securities of any such series in the case of clause (3) above) for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, with interest, to the extent that payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable, upon the overdue principal (and premium, if any) and upon overdue installments of interest, at such rate or rates as may be prescribed therefor by the terms of any such Security (or of Securities of any such series in the case of clause (3) above); and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel and all other amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.07.

If the Company fails to pay such amounts forthwith upon such demand, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, may institute a judicial proceeding for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, and may prosecute such proceeding to judgment or final decree, and may enforce the same against the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities of such series and collect the money adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities, wherever situated.

If an Event of Default with respect to any series of Securities occurs and is continuing, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted herein, or to enforce any other proper remedy.

Section 5.04 Trustee May File Proofs of Claim. In case of the pendency of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, adjustment, composition or other judicial proceeding relative to the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or the property of the Company or of such other obligor or their creditors, the Trustee (irrespective of whether the principal of the Securities shall then be due and payable as therein expressed or by declaration or otherwise and irrespective of whether the Trustee shall have made any demand on the Company for the payment of overdue principal or interest) shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceedings or otherwise:

(1) to file and prove a claim for the whole amount of principal (or portion thereof determined pursuant to Section 3.01(16) to be provable in bankruptcy) (and premium, if any) and interest owing and unpaid in respect of the Securities and to file such other papers or documents as may be necessary and advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee (including any claim for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel and all other amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.07) and of the Securityholders allowed in such judicial proceeding; and

(2) to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute the same; and any receiver, assignee, trustee, liquidator, sequestrator (or other similar official) in any such judicial proceeding is hereby authorized by each Securityholder to make such payment to the Trustee and in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to the Securityholders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due to it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, and any other amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.07.

Nothing herein contained shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Securityholder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of any Holder thereof, or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Securityholder in any such proceeding.

Section 5.05 Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities. All rights of action and claims under this Indenture or the Securities of any series may be prosecuted and enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Securities of such series or the production thereof in any proceeding relating thereto, and any such proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for the payment of the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agent and counsel and any other amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.07, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities of the series in respect of which such judgment has been recovered.

Section 5.06            Application of Money Collected. Any money collected by the Trustee with respect to a series of Securities pursuant to this Article shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such money on account of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, upon presentation of the Securities of such series and the notation thereon of the payment if only partially paid and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

FIRST: To the payment of all amounts due the Trustee under Section 6.07.

SECOND: To the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid upon the Securities of that series for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, respectively.

THIRD: To the Company.

Section 5.07            Limitation on Suits. No Holder of any Security of any series shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless:

- (1)            such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustee of a continuing Event of Default with respect to Securities of such series;
- (2)            the Holders of not less than 3 3-1/3% in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of such series shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in its own name as Trustee hereunder;
- (3)            such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustee indemnity reasonably satisfactory to it against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;
- (4)            the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity has failed to institute any such proceeding; and
- (5)            no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustee during such 60-day period by the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series; it being understood and intended that no one or more Holders of Securities of such series shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other Holders of Securities of such series, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other such Holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal and proportionate benefit of all the Holders of all Securities of such series.

Section 5.08            Unconditional Right of Securityholders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest. Notwithstanding any other provisions in this Indenture, the Holder of any Security shall have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and (subject to Section 3.07) interest on such Security on the respective Stated Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption or repayment, on the Redemption Date or Repayment Date, as the case may be) and to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment, and such right shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

Section 5.09            Restoration of Rights and Remedies. If the Trustee or any Securityholder has instituted any proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, then and in every such case the Company, the Trustee and the Securityholders shall, subject to any determination in such proceeding, be restored severally and respectively to their former positions hereunder, and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustee and the Securityholders shall continue as though no such proceeding had been instituted.

Section 5.10            Rights and Remedies Cumulative. No right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Securityholders is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

Section 5.11            Delay or Omission Not Waiver. No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Holder of any Security to exercise any right or remedy accruing upon any Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of any such Event of Default or an acquiescence therein. Every right and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or to the Securityholders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Securityholders, as the case may be.

Section 5.12            Control by Securityholders. The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series, provided that:

(1)            the Trustee shall have the right to decline to follow any such direction if the Trustee, being advised by counsel, determines that the action so directed may not lawfully be taken or would conflict with this Indenture or if the Trustee in good faith shall, by a Responsible Officer, determine that the proceedings so directed would involve it in personal liability or be unjustly prejudicial to the Holders not taking part in such direction, and

(2)            the Trustee may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustee which is not inconsistent with such direction.

Section 5.13            Waiver of Past Defaults. The Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such series waive any past default hereunder with respect to such series and its consequences, except a default not theretofore cured:

(1)            in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security of such series, or in the payment of any sinking or purchase fund or analogous obligation with respect to the Securities of such series, or

(2) in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which under Article IX cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security of such series.

Upon any such waiver, such default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured, for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any right consequent thereon.

Section 5.14 Undertaking for Costs. All parties to this Indenture agree, and each Holder of any Security by his acceptance thereof shall be deemed to have agreed, that any court may in its discretion require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses, against any party litigant in such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; but the provisions of this Section shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Trustee, to any suit instituted by any Securityholder, or group of Securityholders, holding in the aggregate more than 10% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series to which the suit relates, or to any suit instituted by any Securityholder for the enforcement of the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on an Security on or after the respective Stated Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption or repayment, on or after the Redemption Date or Repayment Date, as the case may be).

Section 5.15 Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws. The Company covenants (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) that it will not at any time insist upon, or plead, or in any manner whatsoever claim or take the benefit or advantage of, any stay or extension law wherever enacted, now or at any time hereafter in force, which may affect the covenants or the performance of this Indenture; and the Company (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) hereby expressly waives all benefit or advantage of any such law, and covenants that it will not hinder, delay or impede the execution of any power herein granted to the Trustee, but will suffer and permit the execution of every such power as though no such law had been enacted.

## ARTICLE VI THE TRUSTEE

Section 6.01 Certain Duties and Responsibilities.

(a) Except during the continuance of an Event of Default with respect to any series of Securities:

(1) the Trustee undertakes to perform such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

(2) in the absence of bad faith on its part, the Trustee may, with respect to Securities of such series, conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions which by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements of this Indenture (but need not confirm or investigate the accuracy of mathematical calculations or other facts stated therein).

(b) In case an Event of Default with respect to any series of Securities has occurred and is continuing, the Trustee shall exercise with respect to the Securities of such series such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture and any indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution relating to such series of Securities, and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent man would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his own affairs.

(c) No provision of this Indenture shall be construed to relieve the Trustee from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act, or its own willful misconduct, except that:

- (1) this Subsection shall not be construed to limit the effect of Subsection (a) of this Section;
- (2) the Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer, unless it shall be proved that the Trustee was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts;
- (3) the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith in accordance with the direction of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee, under this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such series; and
- (4) no provision of this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur any financial liability in the performance of any of its duties hereunder, or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, if it shall have reasonable grounds for believing that repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity against such risk or liability is not reasonably assured to it.

(d) Whether or not therein expressly so provided, every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct or affecting the liability of or affording protection to the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of this Section.

Section 6.02 Notice of Defaults. Within 90 days after the occurrence of any default hereunder with respect to Securities of any series, the Trustee shall transmit by mail to all Securityholders of such series, as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register, notice of all defaults hereunder known to the Trustee, unless such default shall have been cured or waived; provided, however, that, except in the case of a default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security of such series or in the payment of any sinking or purchase fund installment or analogous obligation with respect to Securities of such series, the Trustee shall be protected in withholding such notice if and so long as the board of directors, the executive committee or a trust committee of directors and/or Responsible Officers of the Trustee in good faith determine that the withholding of such notice is in the interests of the Securityholders of such series; and provided, further, that in the case of any default of the character specified in Section 5.0 1(4) with respect to Securities of such series no such notice to Securityholders of such series shall be given until at least 90 days after the occurrence thereof. For the purpose of this Section, the term "default", with respect to Securities of any series, means any event which is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default with respect to Securities of such series.

- (a) the Trustee may conclusively rely and shall be fully protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;
- (b) any request or direction of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Company Request or Company Order and any resolution of the Board of Directors may be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution;
- (c) whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, the Trustee (unless other evidence be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of bad faith on its part, rely upon an Officers' Certificate;
- (d) the Trustee may consult with counsel and the written advice of such counsel or an Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon;
- (e) the Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Securityholders pursuant to this Indenture, unless such Securityholders shall have offered to the Trustee security or indemnity reasonably satisfactory to it against the costs, expenses and liabilities which might be incurred by it in compliance with such request or direction;
- (f) the Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture or other paper or document, but the Trustee, in its discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as it may see fit, and, if the Trustee shall determine to make such further inquiry or investigation, it shall be entitled to examine the books, records and premises of the Company, personally or by agent or attorney;
- (g) the Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder;
- (h) the Trustee shall not be charged with knowledge of any default (as defined in Section 6.02) or Event of Default with respect to the Securities of any series for which it is acting as Trustee unless either (1) a Responsible Officer of the Trustee assigned to the Corporate Trust Department of the Trustee (or any successor division or department of the Trustee) shall have actual knowledge of such default or Event of Default or (2) written notice of such default or Event of Default shall have been given to the Trustee by the Company or any other obligor on such Securities or by any Holder of such Securities;
- (i) the Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it in good faith and believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture; and

(j) the rights, privileges, protections, immunities and benefits given to the Trustee, including, without limitation, its right to be indemnified, are extended to, and shall be enforceable by, the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder, and each agent, custodian and other Person employed to act hereunder.

Section 6.04 Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities. The recitals contained herein and in the Securities, except the certificates of authentication, shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and the Trustee assumes no responsibility for their correctness. The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities. The Trustee shall not be accountable for the use or application by the Company of Securities or the proceeds thereof.

Section 6.05 May Hold Securities. The Trustee, any Authenticating Agent, any Paying Agent, the Security Registrar or any other agent of the Company, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and, subject to Sections 6.08 and 6.13, may otherwise deal with the Company or any Guarantor, if applicable, with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, Authenticating Agent, Paying Agent, Security Registrar or such other agent.

Section 6.06 Money Held in Trust. Subject to the provisions of Section 10.03 hereof, all moneys in any currency or currency received by the Trustee shall, until used or applied as herein provided, be held in trust for the purposes for which they were received, but need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any money received by it hereunder except as otherwise agreed in writing with the Company.

Section 6.07 Compensation and Reimbursement. The Company agrees:

(a) to pay to the Trustee from time to time reasonable compensation for all services rendered by it hereunder (which compensation shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust);

(b) except as otherwise expressly provided herein, to reimburse the Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its agents and counsel), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as shall be determined to have been caused by its own negligence or bad faith; and

(c) to indemnify the Trustee for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without negligence or bad faith on its part, arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of this trust, including the costs and expenses of defending itself against any claim or liability in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its powers or duties hereunder.

As security for the performance of the obligations of the Company under this Section the Trustee shall have a lien prior to the Securities upon all property and funds held or collected by the Trustee as such, except funds held in trust for the payment of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on particular Securities.

When the Trustee incurs expenses or renders services in connection with an Event of Default specified in Section 5.01(5) or (6), the expenses and the compensation for the services are intended to constitute expenses of administration under any bankruptcy law.

The Company's obligations under this Section 6.07 and any lien arising hereunder shall survive the resignation or removal of any Trustee, the discharge of the Company's obligations pursuant to Article IV of this Indenture and/or the termination of this Indenture.

**Section 6.08 Disqualification; Conflicting Interests.** The Trustee for the Securities of any series issued hereunder shall be subject to the provisions of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act during the period of time provided for therein. In determining whether the Trustee has a conflicting interest as defined in Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act with respect to the Securities of any series, there shall be excluded this Indenture with respect to Securities of any particular series of Securities other than that series. Nothing herein shall prevent the Trustee from filing with the Commission the application referred to in the second to last paragraph of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act.

**Section 6.09 Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility.** There shall at all times be a Trustee hereunder with respect to each series of Securities, which shall be either:

- (a) a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America or of any State, authorized under such laws to exercise corporate trust powers and subject to supervision or examination by Federal or State authority, or
- (b) a corporation or other Person organized and doing business under the laws of a foreign government that is permitted to act as Trustee pursuant to a rule, regulation or order of the Commission, authorized under such laws to exercise corporate trust powers, and subject to supervision or examination by authority of such foreign government or a political subdivision thereof substantially equivalent to supervision or examination applicable to United States institutional trustees; in either case having a combined capital and surplus of at least \$50,000,000. If such corporation publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of the aforesaid supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such corporation shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. Neither the Company nor any Person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with the Company shall serve as trustee for the Securities of any series issued hereunder. If at any time the Trustee with respect to any series of Securities shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in Section 6.10.

**Section 6.10 Resignation and Removal.**

- (a) No resignation or removal of the Trustee and no appointment of a successor Trustee pursuant to this Article shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Trustee under Section 6.11.
- (b) The Trustee may resign with respect to any series of Securities at any time by giving written notice thereof to the Company. If an instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee shall not have been delivered to the Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee.
- (c) The Trustee may be removed with respect to any series of Securities at any time by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of that series, delivered to the Trustee and to the Company. If an instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee shall not have been delivered to the Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of removal, the removed Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee.

(d) If at any time:

(1) the Trustee shall fail to comply with Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act pursuant to Section 6.08 with respect to any series of Securities after written request therefor by the Company or by any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of that series for at least six months, unless the Trustee's duty to resign is stayed in accordance with the provisions of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act, or

(2) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible under Section 6.09 with respect to any series of Securities and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any such Securityholder, or

(3) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting with respect to any series of Securities, or

(4) the Trustee shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation, then, in any such case, (i) the Company by a Board Resolution may remove the Trustee, with respect to the series, or in the case of clause (4), with respect to all series, or (ii) subject to Section 5.14, any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee and the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the series, or, in the case of clause (4), with respect to all series.

(e) If the Trustee shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting with respect to any series of Securities, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of the Trustee with respect to any series of Securities for any cause, the Company, by Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee for that series of Securities.

If, within one year after such resignation, removal or incapacity, or the occurrence of such vacancy, a successor Trustee with respect to such series of Securities shall be appointed by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series delivered to the Company and the retiring Trustee, the successor Trustee so appointed shall, forthwith upon its acceptance of such appointment, become the successor Trustee with respect to such series and supersede the successor Trustee appointed by the Company with respect to such series. If no successor Trustee with respect to such series shall have been so appointed by the Company or the Securityholders of such series and accepted appointment in the manner hereinafter provided, subject to Section 5.14, any Securityholder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of that series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to such series.

(f) The Company shall give notice of each resignation and each removal of the Trustee with respect to any series and each appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to any series by mailing written notice of such event by first-class mail, postage prepaid, to the Holders of Securities of that series as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register. Each notice shall include the name of the successor Trustee and the address of its principal Corporate Trust Office.

**Section 6.11**            **Acceptance of Appointment by Successor.** Every successor Trustee appointed hereunder shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the predecessor Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the predecessor Trustee shall become effective with respect to any series as to which it is resigning or being removed as Trustee, and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the predecessor Trustee with respect to any such series; but, on request of the Company or the successor Trustee, such predecessor Trustee shall, upon payment of its reasonable charges, if any, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor Trustee all the rights, powers and trusts of the predecessor Trustee, and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such predecessor trustee hereunder with respect to all or any such series, subject nevertheless to its lien, if any, provided for in Section 6.07. Upon request of any such successor Trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor Trustee all such rights, powers and trusts.

In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the predecessor Trustee and each successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any applicable series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto which shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the predecessor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series as to which the predecessor Trustee is not being succeeded shall continue to be vested in the predecessor Trustee, and shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such indenture supplemental hereto shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust and that each such Trustee shall be Trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee.

No successor Trustee with respect to any series of Securities shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor Trustee shall be qualified and eligible with respect to that series under this Article.

**Section 6.12**            **Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business.** Any corporation into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to all or substantially all of the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided such corporation shall be otherwise qualified and eligible under this Article, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities.

**Section 6.13**            **Preferential Collection of Claims Against Company.** The Trustee shall comply with TIA Section 311(a), excluding any creditor relationship listed in TIA Section 311(b). A Trustee who has resigned or been removed shall be subject to TIA Section 311(a) to the extent indicated.

**Section 6.14**            **Appointment of Authenticating Agent.** At any time when any of the Securities remain Outstanding the Trustee, with the approval of the Company, may appoint an Authenticating Agent or Agents with respect to one or more series of Securities which shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon original issuance, exchange, registration of transfer or partial redemption thereof or pursuant to Section 3.06, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. Wherever reference is made in this Indenture to the authentication and delivery of Securities by the Trustee or the Trustee's certificate of authentication, such reference shall be deemed to include authentication and delivery on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent and a certificate of authentication executed on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and shall at all times be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America, any State thereof or the District of Columbia, authorized under such laws to act as an Authenticating Agent, having a combined capital and surplus of not less than \$50,000,000 and, if other than the Company itself, subject to supervision or examination by Federal or State authority. If such Authenticating Agent publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of said supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such Authenticating Agent shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time an Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, such Authenticating Agent shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in this Section.

Any corporation into which an Authenticating Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which such Authenticating Agent shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to the corporate agency or corporate trust business of an Authenticating Agent, shall continue to be an Authenticating Agent, provided such corporation shall be otherwise eligible under this Section, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of the Trustee or the Authenticating Agent.

An Authenticating Agent may resign at any time by giving written notice thereof to the Trustee and, if other than the Company, to the Company. The Trustee may at any time terminate the agency of an Authenticating Agent by giving written notice thereof to such Authenticating Agent and, if other than the Company, to the Company. Upon receiving such a notice of resignation or upon such a termination, or in case at any time such Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee, with the approval of the Company, may appoint a successor Authenticating Agent which shall be acceptable to the Company and shall mail written notice of such appointment by first-class mail, postage prepaid, to all Holders of Securities of the series with respect to which such Authenticating Agent will serve, as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register. Any successor Authenticating Agent upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder, with like effect as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent. No successor Authenticating Agent shall be appointed unless eligible under the provisions of this Section.

The Company agrees to pay to each Authenticating Agent from time to time reasonable compensation for its services under this Section.

If an appointment with respect to one or more series is made pursuant to this Section, the Securities of such series may have endorsed thereon, in addition to the Trustee's certificate of authentication, an alternate certificate of authentication in the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

[Name of Authenticating Agent]

\_\_\_\_\_  
by  
As Authenticating Agent

\_\_\_\_\_  
by

As Authorized Agent

\_\_\_\_\_

Dated \_\_\_\_\_

ARTICLE VII  
SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY  
TRUSTEE AND COMPANY

Section 7.01            Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Securityholders. The Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee:

(a)            semi-annually, not more than 15 days after December 15 and June 15 in each year in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, a list of the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities of each series as of such December 15 and June 15, as applicable, and

(b)            at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing, within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished; provided, however, that if and so long as the Trustee shall be the Security Registrar for Securities of a series, no such list need be furnished with respect to such series of Securities.

Section 7.02            Preservation of Information; Communications to Securityholders.

(a)            The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, the names and addresses of Holders of Securities contained in the most recent list furnished to the Trustee as provided in Section 7.01 and the names and addresses of Holders of Securities received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar, if so acting. The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in Section 7.01 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

(b)            If three or more Holders of Securities of any series (hereinafter referred to as "applicants") apply in writing to the Trustee, and furnish to the Trustee reasonable proof that each such applicant has owned a Security of such series for a period of at least six months preceding the date of such application, and such application states that the applicants desire to communicate with other Holders of Securities of such series or with the Holders of all Securities with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under such Securities and is accompanied by a copy of the form of proxy or other communication which such applicants propose to transmit, then the Trustee shall, within five Business Days after the receipt of such application, at its election, either:

(1)            afford such applicants access to the information preserved at the time by the Trustee in accordance with Section 7.02(a), or

(2)            inform such applicants as to the approximate number of Holders of Securities of such series or all Securities, as the case may be, whose names and addresses appear in the information preserved at the time by the Trustee in accordance with Section 7.02(a), and as to the approximate cost of mailing to such Securityholders the form of proxy or other communication, if any, specified in such application.

If the Trustee shall elect not to afford such applicants access to such information, the Trustee shall, upon the written request of such applicants, mail to each Holder of a Security of such series or to all Securityholders, as the case may be, whose names and addresses appear in the information preserved at the time by the Trustee in accordance with Section 7.02(a), a copy of the form of proxy or other communication which is specified in such request, with reasonable promptness after a tender to the Trustee of the material to be mailed and of payment, or provision for the payment, of the reasonable expenses of mailing, unless, within five days after such tender, the Trustee shall mail to such applicants and file with the Commission, together with a copy of the material to be mailed, a written statement to the effect that, in the opinion of the Trustee, such mailing would be contrary to the best interests of the Holders of Securities of such series or all Securityholders, as the case may be, or would be in violation of applicable law. Such written statement shall specify the basis of such opinion. If the Commission, after opportunity for a hearing upon the objections specified in the written statement so filed, shall enter an order refusing to sustain any of such objections or if, after the entry of an order sustaining one or more of such objections, the Commission shall find, after notice and opportunity for hearing, that all the objections so sustained have been met and shall enter an order so declaring, the Trustee shall mail copies of such material to all Securityholders of such series or all Securityholders, as the case may be, with reasonable promptness after the entry of such order and the renewal of such tender; otherwise the Trustee shall be relieved of any obligation or duty to such applicants respecting their application.

(c) Every Holder of Securities, by receiving and holding the same, agrees with the Company and the Trustee that neither the Company nor the Trustee shall be held accountable by reason of the disclosure of any such information as to the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities in accordance with Section 7.02(b), regardless of the source from which such information was derived, and that the Trustee shall not be held accountable by reason of mailing any material pursuant to a request made under Section 7.02(b).

Section 7.03 Reports by Trustee.

(a) Within 60 days after May 15 of each year commencing with the first May 15 after the issuance of Securities, the Trustee shall transmit by mail, at the Company's expense, to all Holders as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register, as provided in Trust Indenture Act 313(c), a brief report dated as of May 15 in accordance with and with respect to the matters required by Trust Indenture Act Section 313(a).

(b) The Trustee shall transmit by mail, at the Company's expense, to all Holders as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register, as provided in Trust Indenture Act 313(c), a brief report in accordance with and with respect to the matters required by Trust Indenture Act Section 313(b).

(c) A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Holders, be furnished to the Company and, in accordance with Trust Indenture Act Section 313(d), be filed by the Trustee with each stock exchange upon which the Securities are listed, and also with the Commission.

Section 7.04 Reports by Company. The Company shall file with the Trustee, and transmit to Holders, such information, documents and other reports, and such summaries thereof, as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided pursuant to such Act; provided that any such information, documents or reports required to be filed with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 shall be filed with the Trustee within 15 days after the same is so required to be filed with the Commission. The Company also shall comply with the other provisions of Trust Indenture Act Section 314(a). Delivery of such reports, information and documents to the Trustee is for informational purposes only and the Trustee's receipt of such shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Company's compliance with any of its covenants hereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on Officers' Certificates).

ARTICLE VIII  
CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE OR TRANSFER

Section 8.01 Consolidation, Merger, Conveyance or Transfer on Certain Terms. Except as otherwise set forth in an indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution creating such series of Securities or in the form of security for such Series, the Company shall not consolidate with or merge into any other Person or convey or transfer its properties and assets substantially as an entirety to any Person, unless:

(a) the Person formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or the Person which acquires by conveyance or transfer the properties and assets of the Company substantially as an entirety shall be organized and existing under the laws of the United States of America or any State thereof or the District of Columbia, and shall expressly assume, by an indenture supplemental hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustee, in form reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on all the Securities and the performance of every covenant of this Indenture (as supplemented from time to time) on the part of the Company to be performed or observed;

(b) immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no Event of Default, and no event which, after notice or lapse of time, or both, would become an Event of Default, shall have happened and be continuing; and

(c) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel each stating that such consolidation, merger, conveyance or transfer and such indenture supplemental hereto comply with this Article and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

Section 8.02      Successor Person Substituted. Upon any consolidation or merger, or any conveyance or transfer of the properties and assets of the Company substantially as an entirety in accordance with Section 8.01, the successor Person formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or to which such conveyance or transfer is made shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor had been named as the Company herein. In the event of any such conveyance or transfer, the Company as the predecessor shall be discharged from all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities and may be dissolved, wound up or liquidated at any time thereafter.

## ARTICLE IX SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

Section 9.01      Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Securityholders. Except as otherwise set forth in an indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution creating such series of Securities or in the form of Security for such series, without the consent of the Holders of any Securities, the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee, at any time and from time to time, may enter into one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in form reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, for any of the following purposes:

- (1)            to evidence the succession of another corporation or Person to the Company or any Guarantor, if any, and the assumption by any such successor of the respective covenants of the Company or any Guarantor herein and in the Securities contained; or
- (2)            to add to the covenants of the Company or any Guarantor, if any, or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company or any Guarantor, for the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of any or all series (and if such covenants or the surrender of such right or power are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants are expressly being included or such surrenders are expressly being made solely for the benefit of one or more specified series); or
- (3)            to cure any ambiguity, to correct or supplement any provision herein which may be inconsistent with any other provision herein, or to make any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Indenture; or
- (4)            to add to this Indenture such provisions as may be expressly permitted by the TIA, excluding, however, the provisions referred to in Section 3 16(a)(2) of the TIA as in effect at the date as of which this instrument was executed or any corresponding provision in any similar federal statute hereafter enacted; or
- (5)            to establish any form of Security, as provided in Article II, to provide for the issuance of any series of Securities as provided in Article II vI and to set forth the terms thereof, and/or to add to the rights of the Holders of the Securities of any series; or
- (6)            to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment by another corporation as a successor Trustee hereunder with respect to one or more series of Securities and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, pursuant to Section 6.11; or
- (7)            to add any additional Events of Default in respect of the Securities of any or all series (and if such additional Events of Default are to be in respect of less than all series of Securities, stating that such Events of Default are expressly being included solely for the benefit of one or more specified series); or
- (8)            to provide for uncertificated Securities in addition to or in place of certificated Securities and to provide for bearer Securities; provided that uncertificated Securities are issued in registered form for purposes of Section 163(f) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or in a manner such that the uncertificated Securities are described in Section 163(f)(2)(B) of such Internal Revenue Code; or

(9) to provide for the terms and conditions of conversion into Common Stock or other Marketable Securities of the Securities of any series which are convertible into Common Stock or other Marketable Securities, if any; or

(10) to secure the Securities of any series; or

(11) to add Guarantees in respect of any series or all of the Securities; or

(12) to make any other change that does not adversely affect the rights of the Holders of any or all series of Securities;  
or

(13) to make any change necessary to comply with any requirement of the Commission in connection with the qualification of this Indenture or any supplemental indenture under the Trust Indenture Act.

No supplemental indenture for the purposes identified in clauses (2), (3) or (5) above may be entered into if to do so would adversely affect the rights of the Holders of Outstanding Securities of any series in any material respect.

Section 9.02 Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Securityholders. Except as otherwise set forth in an indenture supplemental hereto or Board Resolution creating such series of Securities or in the form of security for such Series, with the consent of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of all series affected by such supplemental indenture or indentures (acting as one class), by Act of said Holders delivered to the Company and the Trustee (in accordance with Section 1.04 hereof), the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee may enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of the Securities of each such series under this Indenture; provided, however, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby:

(1) change the Maturity of the principal of, or the Stated Maturity of any premium on, or any installment of interest on, any Security, or reduce the principal amount thereof or the interest or any premium thereon, or change the method of computing the amount of principal thereof or interest thereon on any date or change any Place of Payment where, or the coin or currency in which, any Security or any premium or interest thereon is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after the Maturity or the Stated Maturity, as the case may be, thereof (or, in the case of redemption or repayment, on or after the Redemption Date or the Repayment Date, as the case may be), or alter the provisions of this Indenture so as to affect adversely the terms, if any, of conversion of any Securities into Common Stock or other securities; or

(2) reduce the percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, the consent of whose Holders is required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of whose Holders is required for any waiver of compliance with certain provisions of this Indenture or certain defaults hereunder and their consequences, provided for in this Indenture; or

(3) modify any of the provisions of this Section 9.02, Section 5.13 or Section 10.06, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby; or

(4) impair or adversely affect the right of any Holder to institute suit for the enforcement of any payment on, or with respect to, the Securities of any series on or after the Stated Maturity of such Securities (or in the case of redemption, on or after the Redemption Date); or

(5) amend or modify Section 13.01 of this Indenture in any manner adverse to the rights of the Holders of the Outstanding Securities of any series; or

(6) make any change in the terms of the subordination of the Securities in a manner adverse in any material respect to the Holders of any series of Outstanding Securities.

For purposes of this Section 9.02, if the Securities of any series are issuable upon the exercise of warrants, each holder of an unexercised and unexpired warrant with respect to such series shall be deemed to be a Holder of Outstanding Securities of such series in the amount issuable upon the exercise of such warrant. For such purposes, the ownership of any such warrant shall be determined by the Company in a manner consistent with customary commercial practices. The Trustee for such series shall be entitled to rely on an Officers' Certificate as to the principal amount of Securities of such series in respect of which consents shall have been executed by holders of such warrants.

A supplemental indenture which changes or eliminates any covenant or other provision of this Indenture which has expressly been included solely for the benefit of one or more particular series of Securities, or which modifies the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series with respect to such covenant or other provision, shall be deemed not to affect the rights under this Indenture of Holders of Securities of any other series.

It shall not be necessary for any Act of Securityholders under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such Act shall approve the substance thereof.

**Section 9.03 Subordination Unimpaired.** This Indenture may not be amended at any time to alter the subordination, as provided herein, of any of the Securities then Outstanding without the written consent of the requisite holders of each series of debt securities representing Senior Indebtedness (as determined in accordance with terms of the instrument governing such Senior Indebtedness) then outstanding that would be adversely affected thereby.

**Section 9.04 Execution of Supplemental Indentures.** In executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article or the modifications thereby of the trusts created by this Indenture, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 6.01) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture. The Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such supplemental indenture which affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

Section 9.05            Effect of Supplemental Indentures. Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture under this Article, this Indenture shall be modified in accordance therewith, and such supplemental indenture shall form a part of this Indenture for all purposes; and every Holder of Securities theretofore or thereafter authenticated and delivered hereunder shall be bound thereby to the extent provided therein.

Section 9.06            Conformity with Trust Indenture Act. Every supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article shall conform to the requirements of TIA as then in effect.

Section 9.07            Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures. Securities authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to this Article may, and shall if required by the Trustee, bear a notation in form approved by the Trustee as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Trustee and the Board of Directors, to any such supplemental indenture may be prepared and executed by the Company and authenticated and delivered by the Trustee in exchange for Outstanding Securities.

Section 9.08            Notice of Supplemental Indentures. Promptly after the execution by the Company, any affected Guarantor and the Trustee of any Supplemental Indenture pursuant to the provisions of Section 9.02, the Company shall give notice thereof to the Securityholders of each Outstanding Security affected, in the manner provided for in Section 1.06, setting forth in general terms the substance of such Supplemental Indenture. Any failure by the Company to mail such notice, or any defect therein, shall not, however, in any way impair or affect the validity of any such amendment or waiver.

Section 9.09            Revocation and Effect of Consents, Waivers and Actions. Until an amendment, waiver or other action by Securityholders becomes effective, a consent to it or any other action by a Securityholder of any series hereunder is a continuing consent by such Securityholder and every subsequent Securityholder of that Security, even if notation of the consent, waiver or action is not made on such Security. However, any such Securityholder or subsequent Securityholder may revoke the consent, waiver or action as to such Securityholder's Security if the Trustee receives the notice of revocation before the consent of the requisite aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series affected then outstanding has been obtained and not revoked. After an amendment, waiver or action becomes effective, it shall bind every Securityholder of the affected series, except as provided in Section 9.02.

The Company may, but shall not be obligated to, fix a record date for the purpose of determining the Securityholders entitled to consent to any amendment or waiver. If a record date is fixed, then, notwithstanding the first two sentences of the immediately preceding paragraph, those persons who were Securityholders at such record date (or their duly designated proxies), and only those persons, shall be entitled to consent to such amendment, supplement or waiver or to revoke any consent previously given, whether or not such persons continue to be Securityholders after such record date. No such consent shall be valid or effective for more than 90 days after such record date.

## ARTICLE X COVENANTS

Section 10.01          Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest. With respect to each series of Securities, the Company will duly and punctually pay the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on such Securities in accordance with their terms and this Indenture, and will duly comply with all the other terms, agreements and conditions contained in, or made in the Indenture for the benefit of, the Securities of such series.

Section 10.02          Maintenance of Office or Agency. The Company will maintain an office or agency in each Place of Payment where Securities may be presented or surrendered for payment, where Securities may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange, where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities and this Indenture may be served and where any Securities with conversion privileges, if any, may be presented and surrendered for conversion. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the location, and of any change in the location, of such office or agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain such office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee its agent to receive all such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

Unless otherwise set forth in, or pursuant to, a Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto with respect to a series of Securities, the Company hereby initially designates as the Place of Payment for each series of Securities, the Borough of Manhattan, the City and State of New York, and initially appoints the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office as the Company's office or agency for each such purpose in such city.

**Section 10.03 Money for Security Payments to Be Held in Trust.** If the Company shall at any time act as its own Paying Agent for any series of Securities, it will, on or before each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on, any of the Securities of such series, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum sufficient to pay the principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided, and will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure to act.

Whenever the Company shall have one or more Paying Agents for any series of Securities, it will, on or prior to each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on, any Securities of such series, deposit with a Paying Agent a sum sufficient to pay the principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due, such sum to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such principal (and premium, if any) or interest, and (unless such Paying Agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

The Company will cause each Paying Agent other than the Trustee for any series of Securities to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such Paying Agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section, that such Paying Agent will:

- (1) hold all sums held by it for the payment of principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on Securities of such series in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided;
- (2) give the Trustee notice of any default by the Company (or any other obligor upon the Securities of such series) in the making of any such payment of principal (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of such series; and
- (3) at any time during the continuance of any such default, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums so held in trust by such Paying Agent.

The Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to any series of Securities or for any other purpose, pay, or by Company Order direct any Paying Agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such Paying Agent in respect of each and every series of Securities as to which it seeks to discharge this Indenture or, if for any other purpose, all sums so held in trust by the Company in respect of all Securities, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same trusts as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such Paying Agent; and, upon such payment by any Paying Agent to the Trustee, such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such money.

Any money deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent, or then held by the Company, in trust for the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on any Security of any series and remaining unclaimed for two years after such principal (and premium, if any) or interest has become due and payable shall be paid to the Company on Company Request, or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and the Holder of such Security shall thereafter as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for payment thereof, and all liability of the Trustee or such Paying Agent with respect to such trust money, and all liability of the Company as trustee thereof, shall thereupon cease. The Trustee or such Paying Agent, before being required to make any such repayment, may at the expense of the Company mail to the Holders of the Securities as to which the money to be repaid was held in trust, as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register, a notice that such moneys remain unclaimed and that, after a date specified in the notice, which shall not be less than 30 days from the date on which the notice was first mailed to the Holders of the Securities as to which the money to be repaid was held in trust, any unclaimed balance of such moneys then remaining will be paid to the Company free of the trust formerly impressed upon it.

Section 10.04      Statement as to Compliance. The Company will deliver to the Trustee, within 120 days after the end of each fiscal year, a written statement signed by the principal executive officer, principal financial officer or principal accounting officer of the Company stating that:

(1)              a review of the activities of the Company during such year and of performance under this Indenture and under the terms of the Securities has been made under his supervision; and

(2)              to the best of his knowledge, based on such review, the Company has fulfilled all its obligations under this Indenture and has complied with all conditions and covenants on its part contained in this Indenture through such year, or, if there has been a default in the fulfillment of any such obligation, covenant or condition, specifying each such default known to him and the nature and status thereof.

For the purpose of this Section 10.04, default and compliance shall be determined without regard to any grace period or requirement of notice provided pursuant to the terms of this Indenture.

Section 10.05      Legal Existence. Subject to Article VIII, the Company will do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect its legal existence.

Section 10.06      Waiver of Certain Covenants. The Company may omit in respect of any series of Securities, in any particular instance, to comply with any covenant or condition set forth in Sections 10.04 or 10.05 or set forth in a Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto with respect to the Securities of such series, unless otherwise specified in such Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto, if before or after the time for such compliance the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of all series affected by such waiver (voting as one class) shall, by Act of such Securityholders delivered to the Company and the Trustee (in accordance with Section 1.04 hereof), either waive such compliance in such instance or generally waive compliance with such covenant or condition, but no such waiver shall extend to or affect such covenant or condition except to the extent so expressly waived, and, until such waiver shall become effective, the obligations of the Company and the duties of the Trustee in respect of any such covenant or condition shall remain in full force and effect. Nothing in this Section 10.06 shall permit the waiver of compliance with any covenant or condition set forth in such Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto which, if in the form of an indenture supplemental hereto, would not be permitted by Section 9.02 without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby.

ARTICLE XI  
REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES

Section 11.01      Applicability of Article. The Company may reserve the right to redeem and pay before Stated Maturity all or any part of the Securities of any series, either by optional redemption, sinking or purchase fund or analogous obligation or otherwise, by provision therefor in the form of Security for such series established and approved pursuant to Section 2.02 and on such terms as are specified in such form or in the Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto with respect to Securities of such series as provided in Section 3.01. Redemption of Securities of any series shall be made in accordance with the terms of such Securities and, to the extent that this Article does not conflict with such terms, the succeeding Sections of this Article. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Indenture, except in the case of redemption pursuant to a sinking fund, the Trustee shall not make any payment in connection with the redemption of Securities until the close of business on the Redemption Date.

Section 11.02      Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee. The election of the Company to redeem any Securities redeemable at the election of the Company shall be evidenced by, or pursuant to authority granted by, a Board Resolution. In case of any redemption at the election of the Company of less than all of the Securities of any series, the Company shall, at least 45 days prior to the Redemption Date fixed by the Company (unless a shorter notice shall be reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee), notify the Trustee of such Redemption Date and of the principal amount of Securities of such series and the Tranche (as defined in Section 11.03) to be redeemed.

In the case of any redemption of Securities (i) prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, or (ii) pursuant to an election of the Company which is subject to a condition specified in the terms of such Securities, the Company shall furnish the Trustee with an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with such restriction or condition.

Section 11.03      Selection by Trustee of Securities to Be Redeemed. If less than all the Securities of like tenor and terms of any series (a "Tranche") are to be redeemed, the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected not more than 45 days prior to the Redemption Date by the Trustee, from the Outstanding Securities of such Tranche not previously called for redemption, by such method as the Trustee shall deem fair and appropriate and which may include provision for the selection for redemption of portions of the principal of Securities of such Tranche of a denomination larger than the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of that series. Unless otherwise provided in the terms of a particular series of Securities, the portions of the principal of Securities so selected for partial redemption shall be equal to the minimum authorized denomination of the Securities of such series, or an integral multiple thereof, and the principal amount which remains outstanding shall not be less than the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of such series. If less than all the Securities of unlike tenor and terms of a series are to be redeemed, the particular Tranche of Securities to be redeemed shall be selected by the Company.

The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company in writing of the Securities selected for redemption and, in the case of any Security selected for partial redemption, the principal amount thereof to be redeemed.

Securities shall be excluded from eligibility for selection for redemption if they are identified by registration and certificate number in a written statement signed by an authorized officer of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at least 45 days prior to the Redemption Date (unless a shorter period shall be reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee) as being owned of record and beneficially by, and not pledged or hypothecated by either, (a) the Company or (b) an entity specifically identified in such written statement as being an Affiliate of the Company.

For all purposes of this Indenture, unless the context otherwise requires, all provisions relating to the redemption of Securities shall relate, in the case of any Security redeemed or to be redeemed only in part, to the portion of the principal of such Security which has been or is to be redeemed.

Section 11.04 Notice of Redemption. Notice of redemption shall be given by first-class mail, postage prepaid, mailed not less than 15 (unless otherwise provided in the Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto establishing the relevant series) nor more than 45 days prior to the Redemption Date, to each holder of Securities to be redeemed, at his address appearing in the Security Register.

All notices of redemption shall state:

- (1) the Redemption Date;
- (2) the Redemption Price;
- (3) if less than all Outstanding Securities of any series are to be redeemed, the identification (and, in the case of partial redemption, the respective principal amounts) of the Securities to be redeemed;
- (4) that on the Redemption Date the Redemption Price will become due and payable upon each such Security, and that interest, if any, thereon shall cease to accrue from and after said date;
- (5) the place where such Securities are to be surrendered for payment of the Redemption Price, which shall be the office or agency of the Company in the Place of Payment;
- (6) that the redemption is on account of a sinking or purchase fund, or other analogous obligation, if that be the case;
- (7) if such Securities are convertible into Common Stock or other securities, the Conversion Price or other conversion price and the date on which the right to convert such Securities into Common Stock or other securities will terminate; and
- (8) if applicable, that the redemption may be rescinded by the Company, at its sole option, pursuant to Section 11.09 of this Indenture upon the occurrence of a Redemption Rescission Event.

Notice of redemption of Securities to be redeemed at the election of the Company shall be given by the Company or, at the Company's request, by the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Company; provided that if the Trustee is asked to give such notice it shall be given at least five Business Days prior notice.

Section 11.05 Deposit of Redemption Price. On or prior to any Redemption Date and subject to Section 11.09, the Company shall deposit with the Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 10.03) an amount of money sufficient to pay the Redemption Price of all the Securities which are to be redeemed on that date. If any Security to be redeemed is converted into Common Stock or other securities, any money so deposited with the Trustee or a Paying Agent shall be paid to the Company upon Company Request or, if then so segregated and held in trust by the Company, shall be discharged from such trust.

Section 11.06      Securities Payable on Redemption Date. Notice of redemption having been given as aforesaid, the Securities so to be redeemed shall, subject to Section 11.09, on the Redemption Date, become due and payable at the Redemption Price therein specified and from and after such date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of the Redemption Price) such Securities shall cease to bear interest and any rights to convert such Securities shall terminate. Upon surrender of such Securities for redemption in accordance with the notice and subject to Section 11.09, such Securities shall be paid by the Company at the Redemption Price. Unless otherwise provided with respect to such Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, installments of interest the Stated Maturity of which is on or prior to the Redemption Date shall be payable to the Holders of such Securities registered as such on the relevant Regular Record Dates according to their terms and the provisions of Section 3.07.

If any Security called for redemption shall not be so paid upon surrender thereof for redemption, the principal shall, until paid, bear interest from the Redemption Date at the rate borne by the Security, or as otherwise provided in such Security.

Section 11.07      Securities Redeemed in Part. Any Security which is to be redeemed only in part shall be surrendered at the office or agency of the Company in the Place of Payment with respect to that series (with, if the Company or the Trustee so requires, due endorsement by, or a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustee duly executed by, the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing) and the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security without service charge, a new Security or Securities of the same series and Stated Maturity and of like tenor and terms, of any authorized denomination as requested by such Holder in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the principal of the Security so surrendered.

Section 11.08      Provisions with Respect to Any Sinking Funds. Unless the form or terms of any series of Securities shall provide otherwise, in lieu of making all or any part of any mandatory sinking fund payment with respect to such series of Securities in cash, the Company may at its option (1) deliver to the Trustee for cancellation any Securities of such series theretofore acquired by the Company or converted by the Holder thereof into Common Stock or other securities, or (2) receive credit for any Securities of such series (not previously so credited) acquired by the Company (including by way of optional redemption pursuant to the sinking fund or otherwise but not by way of mandatory sinking fund redemption) or converted by the Holder thereof into Common Stock or other securities and theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, and if it does so then (i) Securities so delivered or credited shall be credited at the applicable sinking fund Redemption Price with respect to Securities of such series, and (ii) on or before the 60th day next preceding each sinking fund Redemption Date with respect to such series of Securities, the Company will deliver to the Trustee (A) an Officers' Certificate specifying the portions of such sinking fund payment to be satisfied by payment of cash and by delivery or credit of Securities of such series acquired by the Company or converted by the Holder thereof, and (B) such Securities, to the extent not previously surrendered. Such Officers' Certificate shall also state the basis for such credit and that the Securities for which the Company elects to receive credit have not been previously so credited and were not acquired by the Company through operation of the mandatory sinking fund, if any, provided with respect to such Securities and shall also state that no Event of Default with respect to Securities of such series has occurred and is continuing. All Securities so delivered to the Trustee shall be canceled by the Trustee and no Securities shall be authenticated in lieu thereof.

If the sinking fund payment or payments (mandatory or optional) with respect to any series of Securities made in cash plus any unused balance of any preceding sinking fund payments with respect to Securities of such series made in cash shall exceed \$50,000 (or a lesser sum if the Company shall so request), unless otherwise provided by the terms of such series of Securities, that cash shall be applied by the Trustee on the sinking fund Redemption Date with respect to Securities of such series next following the date of such payment to the redemption of Securities of such series at the applicable sinking fund Redemption Price with respect to Securities of such series, together with accrued interest, if any, to the date fixed for redemption, with the effect provided in Section 11.06. The Trustee shall select, in the manner provided in Section 11.03, for redemption on such sinking fund Redemption Date a sufficient principal amount of Securities of such series to utilize that cash and shall thereupon cause notice of redemption of the Securities of such series for the sinking fund to be given in the manner provided in Section 11.04 (and with the effect provided in Section 11.06) for the redemption of Securities in part at the option of the Company. Any sinking fund moneys not so applied or allocated by the Trustee to the redemption of Securities of such series shall be added to the next cash sinking fund payment with respect to Securities of such series received by the Trustee and, together with such payment, shall be applied in accordance with the provisions of this Section 11.08. Any and all sinking fund moneys with respect to Securities of any series held by the Trustee at the Maturity of Securities of such series, and not held for the payment or redemption of particular Securities of such series, shall be applied by the Trustee, together with other moneys, if necessary, to be deposited sufficient for the purpose, to the payment of the principal of the Securities of such series at Maturity.

On or before each sinking fund Redemption Date provided with respect to Securities of any series, the Company shall pay to the Trustee in cash a sum equal to all accrued interest, if any, to the date fixed for redemption on Securities to be redeemed on such sinking fund Redemption Date pursuant to this Section 11.08.

**Section 11.09      Rescission of Redemption.** In the event that this Section 11.09 is specified to be applicable to a series of Securities pursuant to Section 3.01 and a Redemption Rescission Event shall occur following any day on which a notice of redemption shall have been given pursuant to Section 11.04 hereof but at or prior to the time and date fixed for redemption as set forth in such notice of redemption, the Company may, at its sole option, at any time prior to the earlier of (i) the close of business on that day which is two Trading Days following such Redemption Rescission Event and (ii) the time and date fixed for redemption as set forth in such notice, rescind the redemption to which such notice of redemption shall have related by making a public announcement of such rescission (the date on which such public announcement shall have been made being hereinafter referred to as the "Rescission Date"). The Company shall be deemed to have made such announcement if it shall issue a release to the Dow Jones News Service, Reuters Information Services or any successor news wire service. From and after the making of such announcement, the Company shall have no obligation to redeem Securities called for redemption pursuant to such notice of redemption or to pay the Redemption Price therefor and all rights of Holders of Securities shall be restored as if such notice of redemption had not been given. As promptly as practicable following the making of such announcement, the Company shall telephonically notify the Trustee and the Paying Agent of such rescission. The Company shall give notice of any such rescission by first-class mail, postage prepaid, mailed as promptly as practicable but in no event later than the close of business on that day which is five Trading Days following the Rescission Date to each Holder of Securities at the close of business on the Rescission Date and to the Trustee and the Paying Agent. Each notice of rescission shall (A) state that the redemption described in the notice of redemption has been rescinded and (B) state that such form must be properly completed and received by the Company no later than the close of business on a date that shall be 15 Trading Days following the date of the mailing of such notice of rescission.

ARTICLE XII  
SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES

Section 12.01      Agreement of Subordination. The Company covenants and agrees, and each holder of Securities issued hereunder by his acceptance thereof likewise covenants and agrees, that all Securities shall be issued subject to the provisions of this Article XII; and each Securityholder, whether upon original issue or upon transfer or assignment thereof, accepts and agrees to be bound by such provisions.

The payment of the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on all Securities issued hereunder shall, to the extent and in the manner hereinafter set forth, be subordinated and subject in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness, whether outstanding at the date of this Indenture or thereafter incurred.

The provisions of this Article XII define the subordination of the Securities, as obligations of the Company, with respect to Senior Indebtedness of the Company, as defined for the Company. All such provisions shall also be deemed to apply in the same way (*mutatis mutandis*) to each Guarantor, with appropriate corresponding references to the Senior Indebtedness of such Guarantor. No provision of this Article XII shall prevent the occurrence of any default or Event of Default hereunder.

Section 12.02      Payments to Securityholders. In the event and during the continuation of any default in the payment of principal, premium, interest or any other payment due on any Senior Indebtedness of the Company continuing beyond the period of grace, if any, specified in the instrument or lease evidencing such Senior Indebtedness of the Company, then, unless and until such default shall have been cured or waived or shall have ceased to exist, no payment shall be made by the Company with respect to the principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on the Securities, except sinking fund payments made by the acquisition of Securities under Section 11.08 prior to the happening of such default and payments made pursuant to Article IV hereof from monies deposited with the Trustee pursuant thereto prior to the happening of such default.

Upon any payment by the Company, or distribution of assets of the Company of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities, to creditors upon any dissolution or winding-up or liquidation or reorganization of the Company, whether voluntary or involuntary or in bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership or other proceedings, all amounts due or to become due upon all Senior Indebtedness of the Company shall first be paid in full, or payment thereof provided for in money in accordance with its terms, before any payment is made on account of the principal (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities (except payments made pursuant to Article IV hereof from monies deposited with the Trustee pursuant thereto prior to the happening of such dissolution, winding-up, liquidation or reorganization); and upon any such dissolution or winding-up or liquidation or reorganization any payment by the Company, or distribution of assets of the Company of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities, to which the holders of the Securities or the Trustee would be entitled, except for the provisions of this Article XII, shall (except as aforesaid) be paid by the Company or by any receiver, trustee in bankruptcy, liquidating trustee, agent or other Person making such payment or distribution, or by the holders of the Securities or by the Trustee under this Indenture if received by them or it, directly to the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company (pro rata to such holders on the basis of the respective amounts of Senior Indebtedness of the Company held by such holders, as calculated by the Company) or their representative or representatives, or to the trustee or trustees under any indenture pursuant to which any instruments evidencing any Senior Indebtedness of the Company may have been issued, as their respective interests may appear, to the extent necessary to pay all Senior Indebtedness of the Company in full, in money or money's worth, after giving effect to any concurrent payment or distribution to or for the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company, before any payment or distribution is made to the holders of the Securities or to the Trustee.

In the event that, notwithstanding the foregoing, any payment or distribution of assets of the Company of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities, prohibited by the foregoing, shall be received by the Trustee or the holders of the Securities before all Senior Indebtedness of the Company is paid in full, or provision is made for such payment in money in accordance with its terms, such payment or distribution shall be held in trust for the benefit of and shall be paid over or delivered to the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company or their representative or representatives, or to the trustee or trustees under any indenture pursuant to which any instruments evidencing any Senior Indebtedness of the Company may have been issued, as their respective interests may appear, as calculated by the Company, for application to the payment of all Senior Indebtedness of the Company remaining unpaid to the extent necessary to pay all Senior Indebtedness of the Company in full in money in accordance with its terms, after giving effect to any concurrent payment or distribution to or for the holders of such Senior Indebtedness. For purposes of this Article XII, the words, "cash, property or securities" shall not be deemed to include shares of stock of the Company as reorganized or readjusted, or securities of the Company or any other corporation provided for by a plan of reorganization or readjustment, the payment of which is subordinated at least to the extent provided in this Article XII with respect to the Securities to the payment of all Senior Indebtedness of the Company which may at the time be outstanding; provided that (i) the Senior Indebtedness of the Company is assumed by the new corporation, if any, resulting from any such reorganization or readjustment, and (ii) the rights of the holders of the Senior Indebtedness of the Company (other than leases) and of leases which are assumed are not, without the consent of such holders, altered by such reorganization or readjustment. The consolidation of the Company with, or the merger of the Company into, another corporation or the liquidation or dissolution of the Company following the conveyance or transfer of its property as an entirety, or substantially as an entirety, to another corporation upon the terms and conditions provided for in Article 8 hereof shall not be deemed a dissolution, winding-up, liquidation or reorganization for the purposes of this Section 12.02 if such other corporation shall, as a part of such consolidation, merger, conveyance or transfer, comply with the conditions stated in Article 8 hereof. Nothing in this Section 12.02 shall apply to claims of, or payments to, the Trustee under or pursuant to Section 6.07.

Section 12.03 Subrogation of Securities. Subject to the payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness of the Company, the rights of the holders of the Securities shall be subrogated to the rights of the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company to receive payments or distributions of cash, property or securities of the Company applicable to the Senior Indebtedness of the Company until the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities shall be paid in full; and, for the purposes of such subrogation, no payments or distributions to the holders of the Senior Indebtedness of the Company of any cash, property or securities to which the holders of the Securities or the Trustee would be entitled except for the provisions of this Article XII no payment over pursuant to the provisions of this Article XII, to or for the benefit of the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company by holders of the Securities or the Trustee, shall, as between the Company, its creditors other than holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company, and the holders of the Securities, be deemed to be a payment by the Company to or on account of the Senior Indebtedness of the Company. It is understood that the provisions of this Article XII are and are intended solely for the purpose of defining the relative rights of the holders of the Securities, on the one hand, and the holders of the Senior Indebtedness of the Company, on the other hand.

Nothing contained in this Article XII or elsewhere in this Indenture or in the Securities is intended to or shall impair, as between the Company, its creditors other than the holders of its Senior Indebtedness, and the holders of the Securities, the obligation of the Company, which is absolute and unconditional, to pay to the holders of the Securities the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities as and when the same shall become due and payable in accordance with their terms, or is intended to or shall affect the relative rights of the holders of the Securities and creditors of the Company other than the holders of its Senior Indebtedness, nor shall anything herein or therein prevent the Trustee or the holder of any Security from exercising all remedies otherwise permitted by applicable law upon default under this Indenture, subject to the rights, if any, under this Article XII of the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company in respect of cash, property or securities of the Company received upon the exercise of any such remedy.

Upon any payment or distribution of assets of the Company referred to in this Article XII, the Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 6.01, and the holders of the Securities shall be entitled to rely upon any order or decree made by any court of competent jurisdiction in which such dissolution, winding-up, liquidation or reorganization proceedings are pending, or a certificate of the receiver, trustee in bankruptcy, liquidating trustee, agent or other Person making such payment or distribution, delivered to the Trustee or to the holders of the Securities, for the purpose of ascertaining the Persons entitled to participate in such distribution, the holders of the Senior Indebtedness and other indebtedness of the Company, the amount thereof or payable thereon, the amount or amounts paid or distributed thereon and all other facts pertinent thereto or to this Article XII.

Section 12.04 Authorization by Securityholders. Each holder of a Security by his acceptance thereof authorizes and directs the Trustee in his behalf to take such action as may be necessary or appropriate to effectuate the subordination provided in this Article XII appoints the Trustee his attorney-in-fact for any and all such purposes.

Section 12.05 Notice to Trustee. The Company shall give promptly written notice to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee of any fact known to the Company which would prohibit the making of any payment of monies to or by the Trustee in respect of the Securities pursuant to the provisions of this Article XII. Notwithstanding the provisions of this Article XII or any other provision of this Indenture, the Trustee shall not be charged with knowledge of the existence of any facts which would prohibit the making of any payment of monies to or by the Trustee in respect of the Securities pursuant to the provisions of this Article XII, unless and until a Responsible Officer of the Trustee shall have received written notice thereof at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee from the Company or a holder or holders of Senior Indebtedness or from any trustee therefor; and before the receipt of any such written notice, the Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 6.01, shall be entitled in all respects to assume that no such facts exist; provided that if on a date not fewer than three Business Days prior to the date upon which by the terms hereof any such monies may become payable for any purpose (including, without limitation, the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security) the Trustee shall not have received, with respect to such monies, the notice provided for in this Section 12.05, then, anything herein contained to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall have full power and authority to receive such monies and to apply the same to the purpose for which they were received, and shall not be affected by any notice to the contrary which may be received by it on or after such prior date.

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary hereinbefore set forth, nothing shall prevent any payment by the Company or the Trustee to the Securityholders of monies in connection with a redemption of Securities if (i) notice of such redemption has been given pursuant to Article XI or Section 4.01 hereof prior to the receipt by the Trustee of written notice as aforesaid, and (ii) such notice of redemption is given not earlier than 60 days before the redemption date. The Trustee conclusively shall be entitled to rely on the delivery to it of a written notice by a Person representing himself to be a holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Company (or a trustee on behalf of such holder) to establish that such notice has been given by a holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Company or a trustee on behalf of any such holder or holders. In the event that the Trustee determines in good faith that further evidence is required with respect to the right of any Person as a holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Company to participate in any payment or distribution pursuant to this Article XII, the Trustee may request such Person to furnish evidence to the reasonable satisfaction of the Trustee as to the amount of Senior Indebtedness of the Company held by such Person, the extent to which such Person is entitled to participate in such payment or distribution and any other facts pertinent to the rights of such Person under this Article XII, and if such evidence is not furnished the Trustee may defer any payment to such Person pending judicial determination as to the right of such Person to receive such payment.

Section 12.06      Trustee's Relation to Senior Indebtedness. The Trustee in its individual capacity shall be entitled to all the rights set forth in this Article XII in respect of any Senior Indebtedness of the Company at any time held by it, to the same extent as any other holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Company and nothing elsewhere in this Indenture shall deprive the Trustee of any of its rights as such holder.

With respect to the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company, the Trustee undertakes to perform or to observe only such of its covenants and obligations as are specifically set forth in this Article XII, and no implied covenants or obligations with respect to the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee. The Trustee shall not be deemed to owe any fiduciary duty to the holders of Senior Indebtedness of the Company and the Trustee shall not be liable to any holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Company if it shall pay over or deliver to holders of Securities, the Company or any other Person money or assets to which any holder of Senior Indebtedness of the Company shall be entitled by virtue of this Article XII or otherwise.

Section 12.07      No Impairment of Subordination. No right of any present or future holder of any Senior Indebtedness to enforce subordination as herein provided shall at any time in any way be prejudiced or impaired by any act or failure to act on the part of the Company or by any act or failure to act, in good faith, by any such holder, or by any noncompliance by the Company with the terms, provisions and covenants of this Indenture, regardless of any knowledge thereof which any such holder may have or otherwise be charge with.

Section 12.08      Rights of Trustee. Nothing in this Article XII shall apply to claims of or payments to, the Trustee pursuant to Section 6.07 or 4.02.

Section 12.09      Applicable to Paying Agents. The term "Trustee" as used in this Article XII, shall (unless the context otherwise requires) be construed as extending to and including the Paying Agent within its meaning as fully for all intents and purposes as if the Paying Agent were named in this Article XII in addition to in place of the Trustee; provided, however, that Sections 12.06 and 12.08 shall not apply to the Company or any Affiliate of the Company if it or such Affiliate acts as Paying Agent.

### ARTICLE XIII GUARANTEES

Section 13.01      Guarantees. Any series of Securities may be guaranteed by one or more of the Subsidiaries of the Company or other Persons. The terms and the form of any such Guarantee will be established in the manner contemplated by Section 3.01 for the particular series of Securities. Each Guarantor, as primary obligor and not merely as surety, will fully, irrevocably and unconditionally guarantee, on a subordinated basis, to each Holder of Securities (including each Holder of Securities issued under the Indenture after the date of this Indenture) and to the Trustee and its successors and assigns (i) the full and punctual payment of principal of and interest on the Securities when due, whether at maturity, by acceleration, by redemption or otherwise, and all other monetary obligations of the Company under this Indenture (including obligations to the Trustee) and the Securities and (ii) the full and punctual performance within applicable grace periods of all other obligations of the Company under this Indenture and the Securities. The obligations of each Guarantor under any such Guarantee will be junior and subordinated in right of payment to the Senior Indebtedness of such Guarantor in the same manner and to the same extent as the Securities are subordinated to the Senior Indebtedness of the Issuer.

(a) Each of the Guarantors further agrees that its obligations hereunder shall be unconditional irrespective of the absence or existence of any action to enforce the same, the recovery of any judgment against the Company or any other Guarantor (except to the extent such judgment is paid) or any waiver or amendment of the provisions of this Indenture or the Securities to the extent that any such action or any similar action would otherwise constitute a legal or equitable discharge or defense of a guarantor (except that each such waiver or amendment shall be effective in accordance with its terms).

(b) Each of the Guarantors further agrees that each Guarantee constitutes a guarantee of payment, performance and compliance and not merely of collection.

(c) Each of the Guarantors further agrees to waive presentment to, demand of payment from and protest to the Company or any other Person, and also waives diligence, notice of acceptance of its Guarantee, presentment, demand for payment, notice of protest for nonpayment, the filing of claims with a court in the event of merger or bankruptcy of the Company or any other Person and any right to require a proceeding first against the Company or any other Person. The obligations of the Guarantors shall not be affected by any failure or policy on the part of the Trustee to exercise any right or remedy under this Indenture or the Securities of any series.

(d) The obligation of each Guarantor to make any payment hereunder may be satisfied by causing the Company or any other Person to make such payment. If any Holder of any Security or the Trustee is required by any court or otherwise to return to the Company or any Guarantor, or any custodian, trustee, liquidator or other similar official acting in relation to any of the Company or any Guarantor, any amount paid by any of them to the Trustee or such Holder, the Guarantee of such Guarantor, to the extent theretofore discharged, shall be reinstated in full force and effect.

(e) Each Guarantor also agrees to pay any and all reasonable costs and expenses (including reasonable attorneys' fees) incurred by the Trustee or any Holder of Securities in enforcing any of their respective rights under its Guarantees.

(f) Any term or provision of this Indenture to the contrary notwithstanding, the maximum aggregate amount of each of the Guarantees shall not exceed the maximum amount that can be guaranteed by the relevant Guarantor without rendering the relevant Guarantee under this Indenture voidable under applicable law relating to fraudulent conveyance or fraudulent transfer or similar laws affecting the rights of creditors generally.

*[Signature page follows]*

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed as of the day and year first above written.

Xenetic Biosciences, Inc.

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

[TRUSTEE], as Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

# WESTWARD LAW, LLC\*

3273 E. Warm Springs  
Las Vegas, NV 89120

Telephone: 702-701-3945  
Facsimile: 702-944-7100  
Email: keavery@westwardlaw.com

September 27, 2018

Xenetic Biosciences, Inc.  
99 Hayden Avenue, Suite 230  
Lexington, Massachusetts

*Re: Xenetic Biosciences, Inc., Registration Statement on Form S-3*

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as counsel for Xenetic Biosciences, Inc., a Nevada corporation (the "Company"), in connection with the Registration Statement filed on Form S-3 (the "Registration Statement") by the Company with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Commission") pursuant to the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), for the registration of the sale from time to time by the Company of (a) shares of common stock, par value \$0.001 per share, of the Company (the "Common Stock"), including Common Stock as may from time to time be issued upon conversion of debt securities or preferred stock or the exercise of warrants; (b) shares of preferred stock of the Company as described in the applicable Certificate of Designation (the "Preferred Stock"); (c) debt securities of the Company (the "Debt Securities"); (d) warrants to purchase Common Stock, Preferred Stock or Debt Securities (the "Warrants"); (e) depository shares (the "Depository Shares"); (f) units consisting of one or more shares of Common Stock, shares of Preferred Stock, Depository Shares, Warrants, or any combination of such securities ("Units"); (g) rights to purchase Common Stock or any other securities offered under the Registration Statement ("Rights"); and (h) the Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Depository Shares and Debt Securities that may be issued upon the exercise of the Warrants or in connection with the Units, as applicable. The securities to be offered under the Registration Statement may be issued and sold or delivered from time to time as set forth in the Registration Statement, any amendment thereto, the prospectus contained therein (the "Prospectus") and supplements to the Prospectus and pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act.

Unless otherwise provided in any supplement to the Prospectus forming a part of the Registration Statement relating to a particular series of the Debt Securities, the Debt Securities may be in the form of (a) senior debt securities of the Company to be issued under an indenture (the "Senior Indenture") to be entered into by the Company and a trustee (the "Senior Trustee") or (ii) subordinated debt securities of the Company to be issued under an indenture (the "Subordinated Indenture") to be entered into by the Company and a trustee (the "Subordinated Trustee"). The Senior Indenture together with the Subordinated Indenture are referred to herein as the "Indentures" and the Senior Trustee together with the Subordinated Trustee are referred to herein as the "Trustees." Any series of the Preferred Stock will be issued pursuant to a Certificate of Designation filed with the Secretary of State of Nevada ("Certificate of Designation") relating to the particular series of Preferred Stock being issued. The Warrants may be issued pursuant to a warrant agreement (the "Warrant Agreement") between the Company and a warrant agent to be named therein (the "Warrant Agent"). The Depository Shares may be issued pursuant to a deposit agreement (the "Deposit Agreement") among the Company, a preferred stock depository to be named therein and the holders of the Depository Shares. The Rights may be issued under one or more Rights Agreements (each, a "Rights Agreement"), each to be between the Company and a rights agent to be selected by the Company.

---

We, as your counsel, have examined originals or copies, certified or otherwise identified to our satisfaction, of such documents, corporate records, certificates of public officials and other instruments as we have deemed necessary or advisable for the purpose of rendering this opinion. In rendering the opinions set forth below, we have assumed the genuineness of all signatures, the legal capacity of natural persons, the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals, the conformity to original documents of all documents submitted to us as duplicates or certified or conformed copies, and the authenticity of the originals of such latter documents. We have also assumed that (i) at the time of execution, authentication, issuance and delivery of the Debt Securities, the applicable Indenture will be the valid and legally binding obligation of the Trustee, (ii) at the time of execution, authentication, issuance and delivery of Depositary Shares, the Deposit Agreement will be the valid and legally binding obligation of the applicable depository, (iii) at the time of execution, countersignature, issuance and delivery of any Warrants, each Warrant Agreement will be the valid and legally binding obligation of each counterparty thereto, and (iv) at the time of execution, countersignature, issuance and delivery of any Rights Agreement, each Rights Agreement will be the valid and legally binding obligation of each counterparty thereto.

As to matters of fact material to this opinion, we have relied to the extent we deemed reasonably appropriate upon representations or certificates of officers or directors of the Company, without independently verifying the accuracy of such documents, records and instruments.

Based upon the foregoing, we are of the opinion that:

1. When the necessary corporate action on the part of the Company has been taken to authorize the issuance and sale of such shares of Common Stock proposed to be sold by the Company, and when such shares of Common Stock are issued and delivered in accordance with the applicable underwriting or other agreement, or prospectus or prospectus supplement, against payment therefor (which will not be in an amount less than the par value thereof) or upon conversion or exercise of any security offered under the Registration Statement (the "Offered Security"), in accordance with terms of such Offered Security or the instrument governing such Offered Security providing for such conversion or exercise as approved by the board of directors of the Company (the "Board of Directors"), for the consideration approved by the Board of Directors (which consideration is not less than the par value of the Common Stock), such shares of Common Stock will be validly issued, fully-paid and non-assessable.
  2. Upon designation of the relative rights, preferences and limitations of any series of Preferred Stock by the Board of Directors of the Company, and the proper filing with the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada of a Certificate of Designation relating to such series of Preferred Stock, all necessary corporate action on the part of the Company will have been taken to authorize the issuance and sale of such series of Preferred Stock proposed to be sold by the Company, and when such shares of Preferred Stock are issued and delivered in accordance with the applicable underwriting or other agreement, or prospectus or prospectus supplement, against payment therefor (which will not be in an amount less than the par value thereof), such shares of Preferred Stock will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.
  3. When the Indentures and any supplemental indenture to be entered into in connection with the issuance of any Debt Securities have been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Trustees and the Company; the specific terms of a particular series of Debt Securities have been duly authorized and established in accordance with the Indenture; and such Debt Securities have been duly authorized, executed, authenticated, issued and delivered in accordance with the Indenture and the applicable underwriting or other agreement, or prospectus or prospectus supplement, against payment therefor, such Debt Securities will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable in accordance with their terms, subject to applicable bankruptcy, insolvency and similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally, concepts of reasonableness and equitable principles of general applicability.
  4. When the Warrant Agreement to be entered into in connection with the issuance of any Warrants has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Warrant Agent and the Company; the specific terms of the Warrants have been duly authorized and established in accordance with the Warrant Agreement; and such Warrants have been duly authorized, executed, issued and delivered in accordance with the Warrant Agreement and the applicable underwriting or other agreement, or prospectus or prospectus supplement, against payment therefor, such Warrants will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable in accordance with their terms, subject to applicable bankruptcy, insolvency and similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally, concepts of reasonableness and equitable principles of general applicability.
-

5. When, as, and if Depositary Shares have been duly authorized by appropriate corporate action, and the applicable Deposit Agreement and related agreements have been duly executed and delivered by the Company against payment to the Company of the purchase price of such Depositary Shares, all as contemplated by the Registration Statement and the prospectus supplement relating thereto and in accordance with the applicable underwriting, purchase or other agreement, or prospectus or prospectus supplement, such Depositary Shares will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, except as the same may be limited by: (i) applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, fraudulent conveyance or transfer arrangement, moratorium or other similar laws relating to or affecting the rights of creditors, (ii) general principles of equity, regardless of whether such enforceability is considered in a proceeding at law or in equity, and (iii) the enforceability of any provisions of any agreement providing for indemnification or contribution, to the extent such indemnification or contribution is against public policy.

6. With respect to the Rights and the Units, when (i) the Board of Directors has taken all necessary corporate action to approve (x) the execution and delivery of any such applicable Rights Agreement and/or Units, and (y) any securities to be issued separately or as part of any such Rights and/or Units, and (ii) the Rights Agreement and/or Units and any related pledge agreements have been duly executed, countersigned, issued and delivered upon payment of the consideration therefor provided for in the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, or the Prospectus or a supplement to the Prospectus approved by the Board of Directors and otherwise in accordance with the provisions of the applicable Rights and/or Units, such Rights and/or Units will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with their respective terms.

In connection with the opinions expressed above, we have assumed that, at or prior to the time of the delivery of any such security, (i) the Board of Directors shall have duly established the terms of such security and duly authorized the issuance and sale of such security and such authorization shall not have been modified or rescinded; (ii) the Registration Statement shall have been declared effective and such effectiveness shall not have been terminated or rescinded; (iii) an appropriate prospectus supplement, free writing prospectus or term sheet relating to the Offered Security will have been prepared and filed with the Commission in compliance with the Securities Act and will comply with all applicable laws at the time the Offered Security is offered or issued as contemplated by the Registration Statement; (iv) the Offered Security will be issued and sold in compliance with the applicable provisions of the Securities Act, the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, and the securities or blue sky laws of various states and in the manner stated in the Registration Statement and the applicable prospectus supplement; (v) any purchase, underwriting or similar agreement relating to the Offered Security will have been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company and the other parties thereto; (vi) in connection with the issuance of any Offered Security, an adequate number of authorized and unissued shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock, as applicable, will be available for issuance under the Company's charter, as then in effect, and (vii) there shall not have occurred any change in law affecting the validity or enforceability of such Offered Security.

We have also assumed that none of the terms of any security to be established subsequent to the date hereof, nor the issuance and delivery of such security, nor the compliance by the Company with the terms of such security will violate any applicable law or public policy, nor will it result in a violation of any provision of any instrument or agreement then binding upon the Company, or any restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company.

The opinion expressed herein is limited to the federal securities laws of the United States of America and the corporate laws of the State of Nevada, and we express no opinion as to the effect on the matters covered by the laws of any other jurisdiction.

We hereby consent to the filing of this opinion as an exhibit to the Registration Statement referred to above and further consent to the reference to our name under the caption "Legal Matters" in the Prospectus or prospectus supplement, which is a part of the Registration Statement. In giving this consent, we believe and do not hereby admit that we are "experts" within the meaning of such term as used in Section 11 of the Securities Act or the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder by the Commission with respect to any part of the Registration Statement or related Prospectus or prospectus supplement, nor do we admit that we are in the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Securities Act or the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder by the Commission.

Very truly yours,

WESTWARD LAW LLC

/s/ K. Elisabeth Castro

## CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

We consent to the incorporation by reference in this Registration Statement of Xenetic Biosciences, Inc. on Form S-3 of our report dated March 30, 2018, which includes an explanatory paragraph as to the company's ability to continue as a going concern, with respect to our audits of the consolidated financial statements of Xenetic Biosciences, Inc. as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 and for each of the two years in the period ended December 31, 2017, which is included in the Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017. We also consent to the reference to our firm under the heading "Experts" in the Prospectus, which is part of this Registration Statement.

/s/ Marcum LLP

Boston, Massachusetts  
September 27, 2018